



Logical Domains 1.2 Administration Guide



Sun Microsystems, Inc.
4150 Network Circle
Santa Clara, CA 95054
U.S.A.

Part No: 820-7253-10
June 2009

Copyright 2009 Sun Microsystems, Inc. 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara, CA 95054 U.S.A. All rights reserved.

Sun Microsystems, Inc. has intellectual property rights relating to technology embodied in the product that is described in this document. In particular, and without limitation, these intellectual property rights may include one or more U.S. patents or pending patent applications in the U.S. and in other countries.

U.S. Government Rights – Commercial software. Government users are subject to the Sun Microsystems, Inc. standard license agreement and applicable provisions of the FAR and its supplements.

This distribution may include materials developed by third parties.

Parts of the product may be derived from Berkeley BSD systems, licensed from the University of California. UNIX is a registered trademark in the U.S. and other countries, exclusively licensed through X/Open Company, Ltd.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun logo, the Solaris logo, the Java Coffee Cup logo, docs.sun.com, JumpStart, OpenBoot, Sun Fire, OpenSolaris, SunSolve, ZFS, Java, and Solaris are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. or its subsidiaries in the U.S. and other countries. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries. Products bearing SPARC trademarks are based upon an architecture developed by Sun Microsystems, Inc. PCI EXPRESS is a registered trademark of PCI-SIG.

The OPEN LOOK and Sun™ Graphical User Interface was developed by Sun Microsystems, Inc. for its users and licensees. Sun acknowledges the pioneering efforts of Xerox in researching and developing the concept of visual or graphical user interfaces for the computer industry. Sun holds a non-exclusive license from Xerox to the Xerox Graphical User Interface, which license also covers Sun's licensees who implement OPEN LOOK GUIs and otherwise comply with Sun's written license agreements.

Products covered by and information contained in this publication are controlled by U.S. Export Control laws and may be subject to the export or import laws in other countries. Nuclear, missile, chemical or biological weapons or nuclear maritime end uses or end users, whether direct or indirect, are strictly prohibited. Export or reexport to countries subject to U.S. embargo or to entities identified on U.S. export exclusion lists, including, but not limited to, the denied persons and specially designated nationals lists is strictly prohibited.

DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, ARE DISCLAIMED, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT SUCH DISCLAIMERS ARE HELD TO BE LEGALLY INVALID.

Copyright 2009 Sun Microsystems, Inc. 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara, CA 95054 U.S.A. Tous droits réservés.

Sun Microsystems, Inc. détient les droits de propriété intellectuelle relatifs à la technologie incorporée dans le produit qui est décrit dans ce document. En particulier, et ce sans limitation, ces droits de propriété intellectuelle peuvent inclure un ou plusieurs brevets américains ou des applications de brevet en attente aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays.

Cette distribution peut comprendre des composants développés par des tierces personnes.

Certains composants de ce produit peuvent être dérivées du logiciel Berkeley BSD, licenciés par l'Université de Californie. UNIX est une marque déposée aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays; elle est licenciée exclusivement par X/Open Company, Ltd.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, le logo Sun, le logo Solaris, le logo Java Coffee Cup, docs.sun.com, JumpStart, OpenBoot, Sun Fire, OpenSolaris, SunSolve, ZFS, Java et Solaris sont des marques de fabrique ou des marques déposées de Sun Microsystems, Inc., ou ses filiales, aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays. Toutes les marques SPARC sont utilisées sous licence et sont des marques de fabrique ou des marques déposées de SPARC International, Inc. aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays. Les produits portant les marques SPARC sont basés sur une architecture développée par Sun Microsystems, Inc. PCI EXPRESS est une marque déposée de PCI-SIG.

L'interface d'utilisation graphique OPEN LOOK et Sun a été développée par Sun Microsystems, Inc. pour ses utilisateurs et licenciés. Sun reconnaît les efforts de pionniers de Xerox pour la recherche et le développement du concept des interfaces d'utilisation visuelle ou graphique pour l'industrie de l'informatique. Sun détient une licence non exclusive de Xerox sur l'interface d'utilisation graphique Xerox, cette licence couvrant également les licenciés de Sun qui mettent en place l'interface d'utilisation graphique OPEN LOOK et qui, en outre, se conforment aux licences écrites de Sun.

Les produits qui font l'objet de cette publication et les informations qu'il contient sont régis par la législation américaine en matière de contrôle des exportations et peuvent être soumis au droit d'autres pays dans le domaine des exportations et importations. Les utilisations finales, ou utilisateurs finaux, pour des armes nucléaires, des missiles, des armes chimiques ou biologiques ou pour le nucléaire maritime, directement ou indirectement, sont strictement interdites. Les exportations ou réexportations vers des pays sous embargo des Etats-Unis, ou vers des entités figurant sur les listes d'exclusion d'exportation américaines, y compris, mais de manière non exclusive, la liste de personnes qui font objet d'un ordre de ne pas participer, d'une façon directe ou indirecte, aux exportations des produits ou des services qui sont régis par la législation américaine en matière de contrôle des exportations et la liste de ressortissants spécifiquement désignés, sont rigoureusement interdites.

LA DOCUMENTATION EST FOURNIE "EN L'ETAT" ET TOUTES AUTRES CONDITIONS, DECLARATIONS ET GARANTIES EXPRESSES OU TACITES SONT FORMELLEMENT EXCLUES, DANS LA MESURE AUTORISEE PAR LA LOI APPLICABLE, Y COMPRIS NOTAMMENT TOUTE GARANTIE IMPLICITE RELATIVE A LA QUALITE MARCHANDE, A L'APTITUDE A UNE UTILISATION PARTICULIERE OU A L'ABSENCE DE CONTREFACON.

Contents

Preface	13
1 Overview of the Logical Domains Software	17
Hypervisor and Logical Domains	17
Logical Domains Manager	20
Roles for Logical Domains	20
Command-Line Interface	21
Virtual Input/Output	21
Dynamic Reconfiguration	22
Delayed Reconfiguration	23
Persistent Configurations	23
Logical Domains Physical-to-Virtual Migration Tool	24
Logical Domains Configuration Assistant	24
2 Security	25
Security Considerations	25
Solaris Security Toolkit and the Logical Domains Manager	26
Hardening the Solaris OS	26
Minimizing Logical Domains	28
LDoms Manager Authorization	28
Auditing LDoms Manager Commands	29
Using the Solaris Security Toolkit to Ensure Compliance	29
Enabling and Using BSM Auditing	30
▼ Use the <code>enable-bsm.f</code> in Finish Script	30
▼ Use the Solaris OS <code>bsmconv(1M)</code> Command	31
▼ Verify that BSM Auditing is Enabled	31
▼ Disable Auditing	31

▼ Print Audit Output	31
▼ Rotate Audit Logs	32
Configuring RBAC for Guest Console Access	32
3 Installing and Enabling Software	33
Upgrading a System Already Using Logical Domains	34
Upgrading the Solaris OS	34
Upgrading the Logical Domains Manager and the System Firmware	36
Upgrading to Logical Domains 1.2 Software	36
Installing Logical Domains Software on a New System	38
Updating the Solaris OS	39
Upgrading the System Firmware	39
Downloading Logical Domains Manager and Solaris Security Toolkit	41
Installing the Logical Domains Manager and Solaris Security Toolkit	41
Enabling the Logical Domains Manager Daemon	52
Creating Authorization and Profiles and Assigning Roles for User Accounts	52
Factory Default Configuration and Disabling Logical Domains	55
▼ Remove All Guest Logical Domains	55
▼ Restore the Factory Default Configuration	56
▼ Disable the Logical Domains Manager	56
▼ Removing the Logical Domains Manager	57
▼ Restore the Factory Default Configuration From the Service Processor	57
4 Setting Up Services and Logical Domains	59
Output Messages	59
Sun UltraSPARC T1 Processors	60
Sun UltraSPARC T2 and T2 Plus Processors	60
Creating Default Services	60
▼ Create Default Services	60
Initial Configuration of the Control Domain	62
▼ Set Up the Control Domain	62
Rebooting to Use Logical Domains	63
▼ Reboot	63
Enabling Networking Between the Control/Service Domain and Other Domains	63
▼ Configure the Virtual Switch as the Primary Interface	63

Enabling the Virtual Network Terminal Server Daemon	64
▼ Enable the Virtual Network Terminal Server Daemon	65
Creating and Starting a Guest Domain	65
▼ Create and Start a Guest Domain	65
Installing Solaris OS on a Guest Domain	68
▼ Install Solaris OS on a Guest Domain From a DVD	68
▼ Install Solaris OS on a Guest Domain From a Solaris ISO File	70
▼ Jump-Start a Guest Domain	71
Saving Logical Domain Configurations for Future Rebuilding	72
▼ Save All Logical Domain Configurations	72
▼ Rebuild Guest Domain Configurations	72
Rebuilding the Control Domain	73
Logical Domain Information (ldom_info) Section	75
Cryptographic (mau) Section	75
CPU (cpu) Section	76
Memory (memory) Section	76
Physical Input/Output (physio_device) Section	76
Virtual Switch (vsw) Section	77
Virtual Console Concentrator (vcc) Section	78
Virtual Disk Server (vds) Section	78
Virtual Disk Server Device (vdsdev) Section	79
Configuring Domain Dependencies	80
Domain Dependency Examples	81
Dependency Cycles	83
5 Setting Up I/O Domains	85
I/O Domains and PCI EXPRESS Buses	85
▼ Create a New I/O Domain	86
Enabling the I/O MMU Bypass Mode on a PCI Bus	89
6 Using Virtual Disks	91
Introduction to Virtual Disks	91
Managing Virtual Disks	92
▼ Add a Virtual Disk	92
▼ Export a Virtual Disk Backend Multiple Times	93

▼ Change Virtual Disk Options	94
▼ Change the Timeout Option	94
▼ Remove a Virtual Disk	94
Virtual Disk Identifier and Device Name	94
Virtual Disk Appearance	95
Full Disk	95
Single Slice Disk	95
Virtual Disk Backend Options	96
Read-only (ro) Option	96
Exclusive (excl) Option	96
Slice (slice) Option	97
Virtual Disk Backend	98
Physical Disk or Disk LUN	98
▼ Export a Physical Disk as a Virtual Disk	98
Physical Disk Slice	99
▼ Export a Physical Disk Slice as a Virtual Disk	99
▼ Export Slice 2	100
File and Volume	100
Configuring Virtual Disk Multipathing	103
▼ Configure Virtual Disk Multipathing	104
CD, DVD and ISO Images	105
▼ Export a CD or DVD From the Service Domain to the Guest Domain	106
▼ Export an ISO Image From the primary Domain to Install a Guest Domain	107
Virtual Disk Timeout	109
Virtual Disk and SCSI	109
Virtual Disk and the format(1M) Command	110
Using ZFS With Virtual Disks	110
Configuring a ZFS Pool in a Service Domain	110
Storing Disk Images With ZFS	111
Creating a Snapshot of a Disk Image	112
Using Clone to Provision a New Domain	113
Using Volume Managers in a Logical Domains Environment	114
Using Virtual Disks on Top of Volume Managers	114
Using Volume Managers on Top of Virtual Disks	117

7 Using Virtual Networks	119
Introduction to a Virtual Network	119
Virtual Switch	120
Virtual Network Device	120
Managing a Virtual Switch	122
▼ Add a Virtual Switch	122
▼ Set Options for an Existing Virtual Switch	123
▼ Remove a Virtual Switch	123
Managing a Virtual Network Device	123
▼ Add a Virtual Network Device	124
▼ Set Options for an Existing Virtual Network Device	124
▼ Remove a Virtual Network Device	125
Virtual Device Identifier and Network Interface Name	125
▼ Find Solaris OS Network Interface Name	127
Assigning MAC Addresses Automatically or Manually	128
Range of MAC Addresses Assigned to Logical Domains Software	128
Automatic Assignment Algorithm	128
Duplicate MAC Address Detection	129
Freed MAC Addresses	130
Using Network Adapters With LDOMs	130
▼ Determine If a Network Adapter Is GLDv3-Compliant	130
Configuring Virtual Switch and Service Domain for NAT and Routing	131
▼ Set Up the Virtual Switch to Provide External Connectivity to Domains	132
Configuring IPMP in a Logical Domains Environment	133
Configuring Virtual Network Devices into an IPMP Group in a Logical Domain	133
▼ Configure a Host Route	134
Configuring and Using IPMP in the Service Domain	135
Using VLAN Tagging With Logical Domains Software	136
Port VLAN ID (PVID)	136
VLAN ID (VID)	137
▼ Assign VLANs to a Virtual Switch and Virtual Network Device	137
Using NIU Hybrid I/O	138
▼ Configure a Virtual Switch With an NIU Network Device	140
▼ Enable Hybrid Mode	141
▼ Disable Hybrid Mode	141
Using Link Aggregation With a Virtual Switch	141

Configuring Jumbo Frames	142
▼ Configure Virtual Network and Virtual Switch Devices to Use Jumbo Frames	142
Compatibility With Older (Jumbo-Unaware) Versions of the vnet and vsw Drivers	145
8 Migrating Logical Domains	147
Introduction to Logical Domain Migration	147
Overview of a Migration Operation	148
Software Compatibility	148
Authentication for Migration Operations	149
Migrating an Active Domain	149
Migrating CPUs in an Active Domain	149
Migrating Memory in an Active Domain	150
Migrating Physical I/O Devices in an Active Domain	151
Migrating Virtual I/O Devices in an Active Domain	151
Migrating NIU Hybrid Input/Output in an Active Domain	152
Migrating Cryptographic Units in an Active Domain	152
Delayed Reconfiguration in an Active Domain	152
Operations on Other Domains	152
Migrating Bound or Inactive Domains	152
Migrating CPUs in a Bound or Inactive Domain	153
Migrating Virtual Input/Output in a Bound or Inactive Domain	153
Performing a Dry Run	153
Monitoring a Migration in Progress	153
Canceling a Migration in Progress	154
Recovering From a Failed Migration	155
Migration Examples	155
9 Other Information and Tasks	157
Using CPU Power Management Software	157
Showing CPU Power-Managed Strands	158
Entering Names in the CLI	160
File Names (<i>file</i>) and Variable Names (<i>var-name</i>)	160
Virtual Disk Server <i>backend</i> and Virtual Switch Device Names	160
Configuration Name (<i>config-name</i>)	160
All Other Names	161

Listing Logical Domains Resources	161
Machine-Readable Output	161
Flag Definitions	161
Utilization Statistic Definition	162
Examples of Various Lists	162
Listing Constraints	173
Connecting to a Guest Console Over a Network	175
Stopping a Heavily-Loaded Domain Can Time Out	176
Determining Where Errors Occur by Mapping CPU and Memory Addresses	176
CPU Mapping	177
Memory Mapping	177
Examples of CPU and Memory Mapping	177
Using Console Groups	179
▼ Combine Multiple Consoles Into One Group	179
Operating the Solaris OS With Logical Domains	180
OpenBoot Firmware Not Available After Solaris OS Has Started If Domaining Is Enabled	180
Powercycling a Server	180
Do Not Use the psradm(1M) Command on Active CPUs in a Power-Managed Domain	181
Result of Solaris OS Breaks	181
Results From Halting or Rebooting the Control Domain	181
Using LDoms With ALOM CMT	183
▼ Reset the Logical Domain Configuration to the Default or Another Configuration	183
Managing Logical Domains Configurations	184
▼ Modify the Autorecovery Policy	185
10 Using the XML Interface With the Logical Domains Manager	187
XML Transport	187
XMPP Server	188
Local Connections	188
XML Protocol	188
Request and Response Messages	189
Event Messages	193
Registration and Unregistration	193
The <LDM_event> Messages	194

Event Types	195
Logical Domains Manager Actions	197
Logical Domains Manager Resources and Properties	198
Logical Domain Information (ldom_info) Resource	199
CPU (cpu) Resource	200
MAU (mau) Resource	200
Memory (memory) Resource	201
Virtual Disk Server (vds) Resource	201
Virtual Disk Server Volume (vds_volume) Resource	202
Disk (disk) Resource	202
Virtual Switch (vsw) Resource	203
Network (network) Resource	204
Virtual Console Concentrator (vcc) Resource	205
Variable (var) Resource	205
Physical I/O Device (physio_device) Resource	206
SP Configuration (spconfig) Resource	206
Virtual Data Plane Channel Service (vdpcs) Resource	207
Virtual Data Plane Channel Client (vdpccl) Resource	208
Console (console) Resource	208
Domain Migration	209
A XML Schemas	211
LDM_interface XML Schema	211
LDM_Event XML Schema	213
The ovf-envelope.xsd Schema	214
The ovf-section.xsd Schema	217
The ovf-core.xsd Schema	217
The ovf-virtualhardware.xsd Schema	223
The cim-rasd.xsd Schema	224
The cim-vssd.xsd Schema	229
The cim-common.xsd Schema	230
The GenericProperty XML Schema	234
Binding_Type XML Schema	234

B	Logical Domains Manager Discovery	237
	Discovering Systems Running Logical Domains Manager	237
	Multicast Communication	237
	Message Format	237
	▼ Discover Logical Domains Managers Running on Your Subnet	238
C	Logical Domains Physical-to-Virtual Migration Tool	241
	Logical Domains P2V Migration Tool Overview	241
	Collection Phase	242
	Preparation Phase	242
	Conversion Phase	243
	Installing the Logical Domains P2V Migration Tool	243
	Prerequisites	243
	Limitations	243
	▼ Install the Logical Domains P2V Migration Tool	244
	Using the <code>ldmp2v</code> Command	244
D	Logical Domains Configuration Assistant	253
	Using the Logical Domains Configuration Assistant (GUI)	253
	Using the Logical Domains Configuration Assistant (<code>ldmconfig</code>)	254
	Installing the Logical Domains Configuration Assistant	254
	<code>ldmconfig</code> Features	254
	Glossary	259
	Index	269

Preface

The *Logical Domains 1.2 Administration Guide* provides detailed information and procedures that describe the overview, security considerations, installation, configuration, modification, and execution of common tasks for the Logical Domains Manager 1.2 software on supported servers, blades, and server modules. Refer to “Supported Platforms” in *Logical Domains 1.2 Release Notes* for a list.

This guide is intended for the system administrators on these servers who have a working knowledge of UNIX® systems and the Solaris™ Operating System (Solaris OS).

Related Documentation

The following table shows the documentation that is available for the Logical Domains 1.2 release. These documents are available in HTML and PDF formats unless indicated.

TABLE P-1 Related Documentation

Application	Title	Part Number
Logical Domains 1.2 Software	<i>Logical Domains 1.2 Administration Guide</i>	820-7253-10
	<i>Logical Domains 1.2 Release Notes</i>	820-7254-10
	<i>Logical Domains 1.2 Reference Manual</i> Solaris 10 Reference Manual Collection	820-7255-10
	■ drd(1M) man page ■ vntsd(1M) man page	
LDoms Software Basics	<i>Beginners Guide to LDoms: Understanding and Deploying Logical Domains Software</i> (PDF)	820-0832
LDoms Management Information Base (MIB)	<i>Logical Domains (LDoms) MIB 1.0.1 Administration Guide</i>	820-2319-10
	<i>Logical Domains (LDoms) MIB 1.0.1 Release Notes</i>	820-2320-10
Solaris OS: Installation and Configuration	Solaris 10 5/09 Release and Installation Collection	N/A

TABLE P-1 Related Documentation (Continued)

Application	Title	Part Number
Solaris OS: Security	<i>Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 Administration Guide</i>	819-1402-10
	<i>Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 Reference Manual</i>	819-1503-10
	<i>Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 Release Notes</i>	819-1504-10
	<i>Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 Man Page Guide</i>	819-1505-10

You can find documentation that relates to your server, software, or the Solaris OS on <http://docs.sun.com>. Use the Search box to find the documents and the information that you need.

Sun Welcomes Your Comments

Sun is interested in improving its documentation and welcomes your comments and suggestions. Submit your comments at <http://www.sun.com/hwdocs/feedback>.

Include the following book title and part number with your feedback: *Logical Domains 1.2 Administration Guide*, part number 820-7253-10.

Documentation, Support, and Training

The Sun web site provides information about the following additional resources:

- Documentation (<http://www.sun.com/documentation/>)
- Support (<http://www.sun.com/support/>)
- Training (<http://www.sun.com/training/>)

Typographic Conventions

The following table describes the typographic conventions that are used in this book.

TABLE P-2 Typographic Conventions

Typeface	Meaning	Example
AaBbCc123	The names of commands, files, and directories, and onscreen computer output	Edit your <code>.login</code> file. Use <code>ls -a</code> to list all files. <code>machine_name% you have mail.</code>

TABLE P-2 Typographic Conventions (Continued)

Typeface	Meaning	Example
AaBbCc123	What you type, contrasted with onscreen computer output	machine_name% su Password:
<i>aabbcc123</i>	Placeholder: replace with a real name or value	The command to remove a file is <i>rm filename</i> .
<i>AaBbCc123</i>	Book titles, new terms, and terms to be emphasized	Read Chapter 6 in the <i>User's Guide</i> . A <i>cache</i> is a copy that is stored locally. Do <i>not</i> save the file. Note: Some emphasized items appear bold online.

Shell Prompts in Command Examples

The following table shows the default UNIX system prompt and superuser prompt for the C shell, Bourne shell, and Korn shell.

TABLE P-3 Shell Prompts

Shell	Prompt
C shell	machine_name%
C shell for superuser	machine_name#
Bourne shell and Korn shell	\$
Bourne shell and Korn shell for superuser	#

Overview of the Logical Domains Software

This chapter provides an overview of the Logical Domains software.

The Sun Logical Domains software depends on particular Solaris OS versions, required software patches, and particular versions of system firmware. For more information, see “Required and Recommended Solaris OS” in *Logical Domains 1.2 Release Notes*.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- “Hypervisor and Logical Domains” on page 17
- “Logical Domains Manager” on page 20
- “Logical Domains Physical-to-Virtual Migration Tool” on page 24
- “Logical Domains Configuration Assistant” on page 24

Note – The Logical Domains 1.2 software is supported on the OpenSolaris OS starting with the OpenSolaris 2009.06 release. The Logical Domains 1.2 documentation focuses on the usage of Logical Domains on the Solaris 10 OS. The same Logical Domains features are available for both the Solaris 10 OS and the OpenSolaris OS. However, you might encounter some slight differences when using Logical Domains with the OpenSolaris OS. For more information about the OpenSolaris OS, see the [OpenSolaris Information Center](#).

Hypervisor and Logical Domains

This section provides an overview of the SPARC® hypervisor that supports Logical Domains.

The SPARC *hypervisor* is a small firmware layer that provides a stable virtualized machine architecture to which an operating system can be written. Sun servers that use the hypervisor provide hardware features to support the hypervisor's control over a logical operating system's activities.

A *logical domain* is a virtual machine comprised of a discrete logical grouping of resources. A logical domain has its own operating system and identity within a single computer system. Each

logical domain can be created, destroyed, reconfigured, and rebooted independently, without requiring you to powercycle the server. You can run a variety of applications software in different logical domains and keep them independent for performance and security purposes.

Each logical domain is only permitted to observe and interact with those server resources that are made available to it by the hypervisor. The Logical Domains Manager enables you to specify what the hypervisor should do through the control domain. Thus, the hypervisor enforces the partitioning of the server's resources and provides limited subsets to multiple operating system environments. This partitioning and provisioning is the fundamental mechanism for creating logical domains. The following diagram shows the hypervisor supporting two logical domains. It also shows the following layers that make up the Logical Domains functionality:

- Applications, or user/services
- Kernel, or operating systems
- Firmware, or hypervisor
- Hardware, including CPU, memory, and I/O

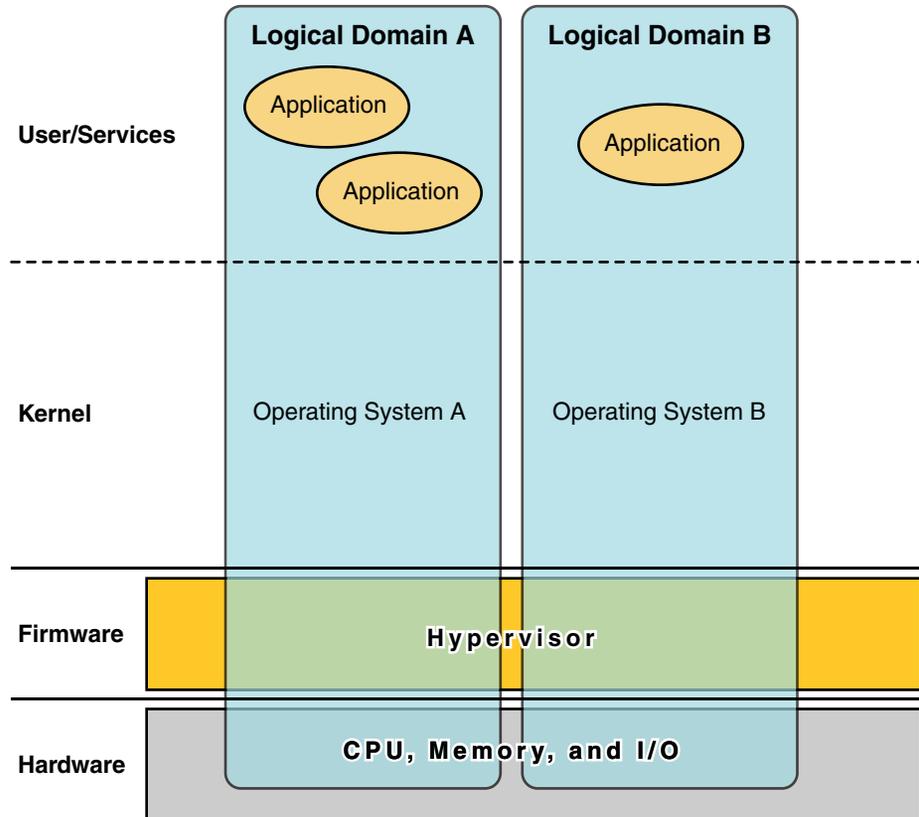


FIGURE 1-1 Hypervisor Supporting Two Logical Domains

The number and capabilities of each logical domain that a specific SPARC hypervisor supports are server-dependent features. The hypervisor can allocate subsets of the overall CPU, memory, and I/O resources of a server to a given logical domain. This enables support of multiple operating systems simultaneously, each within its own logical domain. Resources can be rearranged between separate logical domains with an arbitrary granularity. For example, memory is assignable to a logical domain with an 8-Kbyte granularity.

Each logical domain can be managed as an entirely independent machine with its own resources, such as:

- Kernel, patches, and tuning parameters
- User accounts and administrators
- Disks
- Network interfaces, MAC addresses, and IP addresses

Each logical domain can be stopped, started, and rebooted independently of each other without requiring a powercycle of the server.

The hypervisor software is responsible for maintaining the separation between logical domains. The hypervisor software also provides logical domain channels (LDCs) that enable logical domains to communicate with each other. LDCs enable domains to provide services to each other, such as networking or disk services.

The service processor (SP), also known as the system controller (SC), monitors and runs the physical machine, but it does not manage the logical domains. The Logical Domains Manager manages the logical domains.

Logical Domains Manager

The Logical Domains Manager is used to create and manage logical domains, as well as map logical domains to physical resources. Only one Logical Domains Manager can run on a server.

Roles for Logical Domains

All logical domains are the same and can be distinguished from one another based on the roles that you specify for them. The following are the roles that logical domains can perform:

- **Control domain.** The Logical Domains Manager runs in this domain, which enables you to create and manage other logical domains, and to allocate virtual resources to other domains. You can have only one control domain per server. The control domain is the first domain created when you install the Logical Domains software. The control domain is named `primary`.
- **Service domain.** A service domain provides virtual device services to other domains, such as a virtual switch, a virtual console concentrator, and a virtual disk server. Any domain can be configured as a service domain.
- **I/O domain.** An I/O domain has direct ownership of and direct access to physical I/O devices, such as a network card in a PCI EXPRESS® controller. An I/O domain is often used as a service domain to share physical devices with other domains in the form of virtual devices. The control domain is an I/O domain, and it can also be used as a service domain. The number of I/O domains that you can have depends on your platform. For example, if you are using a Sun SPARC Enterprise® Server T5440, you can have up to four I/O domains.
- **Guest domain.** A guest domain is a non-I/O domain that consumes virtual device services that are provided by one or more service domains. A guest domain does not have any physical I/O devices, but only has virtual I/O devices, such as virtual disks and virtual network interfaces.

You can install the Logical Domains Manager on an existing system that is not already configured with Logical Domains. In this case, the current instance of the OS becomes the control domain. Also, the system is configured as a Logical Domains system that has only one domain, the control domain. After configuring the control domain, you can balance the load of

applications across other domains to make the most efficient use of the entire system. You do this by adding domains and moving those applications from the control domain to the new domains.

Command-Line Interface

The Logical Domains Manager uses a command-line interface (CLI) to create and configure logical domains. The CLI is a single command, `ldm`, that has multiple subcommands. See the [ldm\(1M\)](#) man page.

The Logical Domains Manager daemon, `ldmd`, must be running to use the Logical Domains Manager CLI.

Virtual Input/Output

In a Logical Domains environment, you can provision up to 128 domains on an UltraSPARC® T2 Plus processor system. These systems have a limited number of I/O buses and physical I/O slots. As a result, you cannot provide exclusive access to a physical disk and network devices to all domains on these systems. You can assign a PCI bus to a domain to provide it with access to a physical device. Note that this solution is insufficient to provide all domains with exclusive device access. See [“I/O Domains and PCI EXPRESS Buses” on page 85](#). This lack of direct physical I/O device access is addressed by implementing a virtualized I/O model.

Any logical domains that have no physical I/O access are configured with virtual I/O devices that communicate with a service domain. The service domain runs a virtual device service to provide access to a physical device or to its functions. In this client-server model, virtual I/O devices either communicate with each other or with a service counterpart through interdomain communication channels called logical domain channels (LDCs). The virtualized I/O functionality includes support for virtual networking, storage, and consoles.

Virtual Network

Logical Domains uses the virtual network device and virtual network switch device to implement virtual networking. The virtual network (`vnet`) device emulates an Ethernet device and communicates with other `vnet` devices in the system by using a point-to-point channel. The virtual switch (`vsw`) device primarily functions as a multiplexor of all the virtual network's incoming and outgoing packets. The `vsw` device interfaces directly with a physical network adapter on a service domain, and sends and receives packets on behalf of a virtual network. The `vsw` device also functions as a simple layer-2 switch and switches packets between the `vnet` devices connected to it within the system.

Virtual Storage

The virtual storage infrastructure uses a client-server model to enable logical domains to access block-level storage that is not directly assigned to them. The model uses the following components:

- Virtual disk client (vdc) that exports a block device interface
- Virtual disk service (vds) that processes disk requests on behalf of the virtual disk client and submits them to the backend storage that resides on the service domain

Although the virtual disks appear as regular disks on the client domain, most disk operations are forwarded to the virtual disk service and processed on the service domain.

Virtual Console

In a Logical Domains environment, console I/O from the primary domain is directed to the service processor. The console I/O from all other domains is redirected to the service domain that is running the virtual control concentrator (vcc). The domain that runs the vcc is typically the primary domain. The virtual console concentrator service functions as a concentrator for all domains' console traffic, and interfaces with the virtual network terminal server daemon (vntsd) to provide access to each console through a UNIX socket.

Dynamic Reconfiguration

Dynamic reconfiguration (DR) is the ability to add or remove resources while the operating system is running. The ability to perform dynamic reconfiguration of a particular resource type is dependent on having support in the OS running in the logical domain.

Dynamic reconfiguration is supported for the following resources:

- **Virtual CPUs** – Supported in all versions of the Solaris 10 OS
- **Virtual I/O devices** – Supported in at least the Solaris 10 10/08 OS
- **Memory** – Not supported
- **Physical I/O devices** – Not supported

To use the dynamic reconfiguration capability, the Logical Domains dynamic reconfiguration daemon, `drd`, must be running in the domain that you want to change. See the [drd\(1M\)](#) man page.

Delayed Reconfiguration

In contrast to dynamic reconfiguration operations that take place immediately, delayed reconfiguration operations take effect in the following circumstances:

- After the next reboot of the OS
- After a stop and start of the logical domain

The Logical Domains Manager 1.2 software restricts delayed reconfiguration operations to the control domain. For all other domains, you must stop the domain to modify the configuration unless the resource can be dynamically reconfigured.

If you are using a Sun UltraSPARC T1 processor, when the Logical Domains Manager is first installed and enabled (or when the configuration is restored to `factory-default`), `ldmd` runs in configuration mode. In this mode, reconfiguration requests are accepted and queued up, but are not acted upon. This allows a new configuration to be generated and stored on the SP without affecting the state of the running machine. Thus, configuration mode is not encumbered by any restrictions such as delayed reconfiguration and reboot of I/O domains.

When a delayed reconfiguration is in progress on the control domain, other reconfiguration requests for the control domain are deferred until it is rebooted, or stopped and started. Also, when a delayed reconfiguration is outstanding for the control domain, reconfiguration requests for other logical domains are severely restricted and will fail with an appropriate error message.

The Logical Domains Manager `ldm cancel-operation reconf` command cancels delayed reconfiguration operations on the control domain. You can list delayed reconfiguration operations by using the `ldm list-domain` command. For more information about how to use the delayed reconfiguration feature, see the [ldm\(1M\)](#) man page.

Note – You cannot use the `ldm cancel-operation reconf` command if any other `ldm remove-*` commands have already performed a delayed reconfiguration operation on virtual I/O devices. The `ldm cancel-operation reconf` command fails in these circumstances.

Persistent Configurations

You can use the `ldm` command to store the current configuration of a logical domain on the service processor. You can add a configuration, specify a configuration to be used, remove a configuration, and list the configurations. See the [ldm\(1M\)](#) man page.

You can also use an ALOM CMT Version 1.3 command to select a configuration to boot, see [“Using LDoms With ALOM CMT” on page 183](#).

For information about managing configurations, see [“Managing Logical Domains Configurations” on page 184](#).

Logical Domains Physical-to-Virtual Migration Tool

The Logical Domains Physical-to-Virtual (P2V) Migration Tool automatically converts an existing physical system to a virtual system that runs in a logical domain on a chip multithreading (CMT) system. The source system can be any of the following:

- Any sun4u SPARC system that runs at least the Solaris 8 Operating System
- Any sun4v system that runs the Solaris 10 OS, but does not run the Logical Domains software

For information about the tool and about installing it, see [Appendix C, “Logical Domains Physical-to-Virtual Migration Tool.”](#) For information about the `ldmp2v` command, see the `ldmp2v(1M)` man page.

Logical Domains Configuration Assistant

The Logical Domains Configuration Assistant leads you through the configuration of a logical domain by setting basic properties. It runs on CMT-based systems that are known as Sun Coolthreads Servers. It can be used to configure any system where the Logical Domains software is installed but not already configured.

After gathering the configuration data, the Configuration Assistant creates a configuration that is suitable for booting as a logical domain. You can also use the default values selected by the Configuration Assistant to create a usable system configuration.

The Configuration Assistant is available as both a graphical user interface (GUI) and terminal-based tool.

For more information, see [Appendix D, “Logical Domains Configuration Assistant,”](#) and the `ldmconfig(1M)` man page.

Security

This chapter describes the Solaris Security Toolkit software and how you can use it to secure the Solaris OS in your logical domains.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- “Security Considerations” on page 25
- “Solaris Security Toolkit and the Logical Domains Manager” on page 26
- “Enabling and Using BSM Auditing” on page 30
- “Configuring RBAC for Guest Console Access” on page 32

Security Considerations

The Solaris Security Toolkit software, informally known as the JumpStart™ Architecture and Security Scripts (JASS) toolkit, provides an automated, extensible, and scalable mechanism to build and maintain secure Solaris OS systems. The Solaris Security Toolkit provides security for devices critical to the management of your server, including the control domain in the Logical Domains Manager.

The Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 software package, `SUNWjass`, provides the means to secure the Solaris Operating System on your control domain through the use of the `install-ldm` script by:

- Letting the Solaris Security Toolkit automatically harden your control domain by using the Logical Domains Manager install script (`install-ldm`) and the control driver specific to the Logical Domains Manager (`ldm_control-secure.driver`).
- Selecting an alternative driver when using the install script.
- Selecting no driver when using the install script and applying your own Solaris hardening.

The `SUNWjass` package is located with the Logical Domains (LDDoms) Manager 1.2 software package, `SUNWldm`, at Sun's software download web site. You have the option to download and install the Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 software package at the same time you download and install the Logical Domains Manager 1.2 software. The Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 software

package includes the required patches to enable the Solaris Security Toolkit software to work with the Logical Domains Manager. Once the software is installed, you can harden your system with Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 software. [Chapter 3, “Installing and Enabling Software,”](#) tells you how to install and configure the Solaris Security Toolkit, and harden your control domain.

Following are the security functions available to users of the Logical Domains Manager provided by the Solaris Security Toolkit:

- *Hardening* – Modifying Solaris OS configurations to improve a system's security using the Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 software with required patches to enable the Solaris Security Toolkit to work with the Logical Domains Manager.
- *Minimizing* – Installing the minimum number of core Solaris OS packages necessary for LDoms and LDoms Management Information Base (MIB) support.
- *Authorization* – Setting up authorization using the Solaris OS Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) adapted for the Logical Domains Manager.
- *Auditing* – Using the Solaris OS Basic Security module (BSM) adapted for the Logical Domains Manager to identify the source of security changes to the system to determine what was done, when it was done, by whom, and what was affected.
- *Compliance* – Determining if a system's configuration is in compliance with a predefined security profile using the Solaris Security Toolkit's auditing feature.

Solaris Security Toolkit and the Logical Domains Manager

[Chapter 3, “Installing and Enabling Software,”](#) tells you how to install the Solaris Security Toolkit to make it work with the Logical Domains Manager. You would install the Solaris Security Toolkit on the control domain, which is where the Logical Domains Manager runs. You can also install the Solaris Security Toolkit on the other logical domains. The only difference would be that you would use the `ldm_control-secure.driver` to harden the control domain and you would use another driver, such as the `secure.driver`, to harden the other logical domains. This is because the `ldm_control-secure.driver` is specific to the control domain. The `ldm_control-secure.driver` is based on the `secure.driver` and has been customized and tested for use with the Logical Domains Manager. Refer to the [Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 Reference Manual](#) for more information about the `secure.driver`.

Hardening the Solaris OS

The driver (`ldm_control-secure.driver`) that Solaris Security Toolkit uses to harden the Solaris OS on the control domain is specifically tailored so that the Logical Domains Manager can run with the OS. The `ldm_control-secure.driver` is analogous to the `secure.driver` described in the [Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 Reference Manual](#).

The `ldm_control-secure.driver` provides a baseline configuration for the control domain of a system running the Logical Domains Manager software. It is intended to provide fewer system services than typical for a Solaris OS domain, reserving the control domain for Logical Domains Manager operations, rather than general usage.

The `install-ldm` script installs the Logical Domains Manager software if it is not already installed, and enables the software.

Following is a short summary of the other notable changes from `secure.driver`.

- The Telnet server is disabled from running. You can use Secure Shell (`ssh`) instead. You also can still use the Telnet client to access virtual consoles started by the Logical Domains virtual network terminal server daemon (`vntsd`). For example, if a virtual console is running that is listening to TCP port 5001 on the local system, you can access it as follows.

```
# telnet localhost 5001
```

See “[Enabling the Logical Domains Manager Daemon](#)” on page 52 for instructions on enabling `vntsd`. It is not automatically enabled.

- The following finish scripts have been added. They enable the Logical Domains Manager to install and start. Some of these added scripts must be added to any customized drivers you make and some are optional. The scripts are marked as to whether they are required or optional.
 - `install-ldm.fin` – Installs the `SUNWldm` package. (*Required*)
 - `enable-ldmd.fin` – Enables the Logical Domains Manager daemon (`ldmd`) (*Required*)
 - `enable-ssh-root-login.fin` – Enables the superuser to directly log in through the Secure Shell (`ssh`). (*Optional*)
- The following files have changed. These changes are optional to make in any customized drivers you have and are marked as optional.
 - `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` – Root account access is allowed for the entire network. This file is not used in either driver. (*Optional*)
 - `/etc/ipf/ipf.conf` – UDP port 161 (SNMP) is opened. (*Optional*)
 - `/etc/host.allow` – The Secure Shell daemon (`sshd`) is open for the entire network, not just the local subnet. (*Optional*)
- The following finish scripts are disabled (commented out). You should comment out the `disable-rpc.fin` script in any customized driver you make. The other changes are optional. The scripts are marked as to whether they are required or optional.
 - `enable-ipfilter.fin` – IP Filter, a network packet filter, is not enabled. (*Optional*)
 - `disable-rpc.fin` – Leaves Remote Procedure Call (RPC) service enabled. The RPC service is used by many other system services, such as Network Information Services (NIS) and network file system (NFS). (*Required*)

- `disable-sma.fin` – Leaves the System Management Agent (NET-SNMP) enabled. (*Optional*)
- `disable-ssh-root-login.fin` – ssh root login cannot be disabled.
- `set-term-type.fin` – Unneeded legacy script. (*Optional*)

Minimizing Logical Domains

The Solaris OS can be configured with different quantities of packages, depending on your needs. Minimization reduces this set of packages to the bare minimum required to run your desired applications. Minimization is important because it reduces the amount of software containing potential security vulnerabilities and also reduces the level of effort associated with keeping the installed software properly patched. The logical domain minimization activity provides JumpStart support for installing a minimized Solaris OS that still fully supports any domain.

The Solaris Security Toolkit provides a JumpStart profile, `minimal-ldm_control.profile`, for minimizing a logical domain for LDoms, which installs all the Solaris OS packages necessary for LDoms and LDoms MIB support. If you want to use the LDoms MIB on the control domain, you need to add that package separately after you install the LDoms and Solaris Security Toolkit packages. It is not installed automatically with the other software. Refer to the *Logical Domains (LDoms) MIB 1.0.1 Administration Guide* for more information about installing and using the LDoms MIB.

LDoms Manager Authorization

Authorization for the Logical Domains Manager has two levels:

- Read – allows you to view, but not modify the configuration.
- Read and write – allows you to view and change the configuration.

The changes are not made to the Solaris OS, but are added to the authorization file by the package script `postinstall` when the Logical Domains Manager is installed. Similarly, the authorization entries are removed by the package script `preremove`.

The following table lists the `ldm` subcommands with the corresponding user authorization that is needed to perform the commands.

TABLE 2-1 The `ldm` Subcommands and User Authorizations

ldm Subcommand ¹	User Authorization
<code>add-*</code>	<code>solaris.ldoms.write</code>

¹ Refers to all the resources you can add, list, remove, or set.

TABLE 2-1 The `ldm` Subcommands and User Authorizations (Continued)

ldm Subcommand ¹	User Authorization
<code>bind-domain</code>	<code>solaris.ldoms.write</code>
<code>list</code>	<code>solaris.ldoms.read</code>
<code>list-*</code>	<code>solaris.ldoms.read</code>
<code>panic-domain</code>	<code>solaris.ldoms.write</code>
<code>remove-*</code>	<code>solaris.ldoms.write</code>
<code>set-*</code>	<code>solaris.ldoms.write</code>
<code>start-domain</code>	<code>solaris.ldoms.write</code>
<code>stop-domain</code>	<code>solaris.ldoms.write</code>
<code>unbind-domain</code>	<code>solaris.ldoms.write</code>

¹ Refers to all the resources you can add, list, remove, or set.

Auditing LDom Manager Commands

Auditing the Logical Domains Manager CLI commands is done with Solaris OS Basic Security module (BSM) auditing. Refer to the Solaris 10 *System Administration Guide: Security Services* for detailed information about using Solaris OS BSM auditing.

BSM auditing is not enabled by default for the Logical Domains Manager; however, the infrastructure is provided. You can enable BSM auditing in one of two ways:

- Run the `enable-bsm` `fin` script in the Solaris Security Toolkit.
- Use the Solaris OS `bsmconv(1M)` command.

For further details about enabling, verifying, disabling, printing output, and rotating logs using BSM auditing with the Logical Domains Manager, see “[Enabling and Using BSM Auditing](#)” on page 30.

Using the Solaris Security Toolkit to Ensure Compliance

Solaris Security Toolkit does have its own auditing capabilities. The Solaris Security Toolkit software can automatically validate the security posture of any system running the Solaris OS by comparing it with a predefined security profile. Refer to “Auditing System Security” in the *Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 Administration Guide* for more information about this compliance function.

Enabling and Using BSM Auditing

The Logical Domains Manager uses the Solaris OS Basic Security module (BSM) auditing capability. BSM auditing provides the means to examine the history of actions and events on your control domain to determine what happened. The history is kept in a log of what was done, when it was done, by whom, and what was affected.

If you want to use this auditing capability, this section describes how to enable, verify, disable, print output, and rotate audit logs. You can find further information about BSM auditing in the *Solaris 10 System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

You can enable BSM auditing in one of two ways. When you want to disable auditing, be sure you use the same method that you used in enabling. The two methods are as follows:

- Use the `enable-bsm.fin` finish script in the Solaris Security Toolkit.
The `enable-bsm.fin` script is not used by default by the `ldm_control-secure.driver`. You must enable the finish script in your chosen driver.
- Use the Solaris OS `bsmconv(1M)` command.

Here are the procedures for both methods.

▼ Use the `enable-bsm.fin` Finish Script

- 1 **Copy the `ldm_control-secure.driver` to `my-ldm.driver`, where `my-ldm.driver` is the name for your copy of the `ldm_control-secure.driver`.**
- 2 **Copy the `ldm_control-config.driver` to `my-ldm-config.driver`, where `my-ldm-config.driver` is the name for your copy of the `ldm_control-config.driver`.**
- 3 **Copy the `ldm_control-hardening.driver` to `my-ldm-hardening.driver`, where `my-ldm-hardening.driver` is the name for your copy of the `ldm_control-hardening.driver`.**
- 4 **Edit `my-ldm.driver` to refer to the new configuration and hardening drivers, `my-ldm-control.driver` and `my-ldm-hardening.driver`, respectively.**
- 5 **Edit `my-ldm-hardening.driver`, and remove the pound sign (#) from in front of the following line in the driver.**
`enable-bsm.fin`
- 6 **Execute `my-ldm.driver`.**
`# /opt/SUNWjass/bin/jass-execute -d my-ldm.driver`
- 7 **Reboot the Solaris OS for auditing to take effect.**

▼ Use the Solaris OS `bsmconv(1M)` Command

- 1 Add `vs` in the flags: line of the `/etc/security/audit_control` file.
- 2 Run the `bsmconv(1M)` command.

```
# /etc/security/bsmconv
```

For more information about this command, refer to the `bsmconv(1M)` man page.
- 3 Reboot the Solaris OS for auditing to take effect.

▼ Verify that BSM Auditing is Enabled

- 1 Type the following command.

```
# auditconfig -getcond
```
- 2 Check that `audit condition = auditing` appears in the output.

▼ Disable Auditing

You can disable auditing in one of two ways, depending on how you enabled it. See “[Enabling and Using BSM Auditing](#)” on page 30.

- 1 Do one of the following.
 - Undo the Solaris Security Toolkit hardening run that enabled BSM auditing.

```
# /opt/SUNWjass/bin/jass-execute -u
```
 - Run the Solaris OS `bsmunconv(1M)` command.

```
# /etc/security/bsmunconv
```
- 2 Reboot the Solaris OS for the disabling of auditing to take effect.

▼ Print Audit Output

- Use one of the following to print BSM audit output:
 - Use the Solaris OS commands `auditreduce(1M)` and `praudit(1M)` to print audit output.

```
# auditreduce -c vs | praudit
# auditreduce -c vs -a 20060502000000 | praudit
```

- Use the Solaris OS `praudit -x` command to print XML output.

▼ Rotate Audit Logs

- Use the Solaris OS `audit -n` command to rotate audit logs.

Configuring RBAC for Guest Console Access

The `vntsd` daemon provides an SMF property named `vntsd/authorization`. This property can be configured to enable the authorization checking of users and roles for a domain console or a console group. To enable authorization checking, use the `svccfg` command to set the value of this property to `true`. While this option is enabled, `vntsd` listens and accepts connections only on `localhost`. If the `listen_addr` property specifies an alternate IP address when `vntsd/authorization` is enabled, `vntsd` ignores the alternate IP address and continues to listen only on `localhost`.

By default, an authorization to access all guest consoles is added to the `auth_attr` database, when the `vntsd` service is enabled.

```
solaris.vntsd.consoles::Access All LDoms Guest Consoles::
```

Superuser can use the `usermod` command to assign the required authorizations to other users or roles. This permits only the user or role who has the required authorizations to access a given domain console or console groups.

The following example gives user `terry` the authorization to access all domain consoles:

```
# usermod -A "solaris.vntsd.consoles" terry
```

The following example adds a new authorization for a specific domain console with the name `ldg1` and assigns that authorization to a user `sam`:

1. Add the new authorization entry to the `auth_attr` file for domain `ldg1`.

```
solaris.vntsd.console-ldg1::Access Specific LDoms Guest Console::
```

2. Assign this authorization to user `sam`:

```
# usermod -A "solaris.vntsd.console-ldg1" sam
```

For more information about authorizations and RBAC, see [System Administration Guide: Security Services](#).

Installing and Enabling Software

This chapter describes how to install or upgrade the different software components required to enable the Logical Domains (LDom)s 1.2 software. Using the LDom)s software requires the following components:

- Supported platform, refer to “Supported Platforms” in *Logical Domains 1.2 Release Notes* for a list of supported platforms.
- Control domain running an operating system at least equivalent to the Solaris 10 10/08 OS with any patches recommended in “Required Software and Patches” in the *Logical Domains 1.2 Release Notes*. See “Upgrading the Solaris OS” on page 34.
- System firmware version 6.7.x for your Sun UltraSPARC T1 platform or system firmware version 7.2.x for your Sun UltraSPARC T2 or T2 Plus platform at a minimum. See “Upgrading the System Firmware” on page 39.
- Logical Domains 1.2 software installed and enabled on the control domain. See “Installing the Logical Domains Manager and Solaris Security Toolkit” on page 41.
- (Optional) the Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 software. See “Installing the Logical Domains Manager and Solaris Security Toolkit” on page 41
- (Optional) the Logical Domains Management Information Base (MIB) software package. Refer to the *Logical Domains (LDoms) MIB 1.0.1 Administration Guide* for more information about using the LDom)s MIB.

The Solaris OS and the system firmware must be installed or upgraded on your server before you install or upgrade the Logical Domains Manager. If your system is already using Logical Domains software, see “Upgrading a System Already Using Logical Domains” on page 34. Otherwise, see “Installing Logical Domains Software on a New System” on page 38.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- “Upgrading a System Already Using Logical Domains” on page 34
- “Installing Logical Domains Software on a New System” on page 38
- “Factory Default Configuration and Disabling Logical Domains” on page 55

Upgrading a System Already Using Logical Domains

This section describes the process of upgrading the Solaris OS, firmware, and Logical Domains Manager components on a system that is already using the Logical Domains software.

Upgrading the Solaris OS

If your system is already configured with the Logical Domain software, then the control domain has to be upgraded. The other existing domains also have to be upgraded if you want to be able to use all features of the Logical Domains 1.2 software.

Refer to “[Required Software and Patches](#)” in *Logical Domains 1.2 Release Notes* to find the Solaris 10 OS that you should use for this version of the Logical Domains software, and the required and recommended patches for the different domains. Refer to the Solaris 10 installation guide for complete instructions for upgrading the Solaris OS.

When upgrading the Solaris OS in the control domain, you need to save and restore the Logical Domains autosave configuration data and the constraints database file, as described in this section.

Saving and Restoring Autosave Configuration Directories

Whenever you upgrade the operating system on the control domain, you must save and restore the Logical Domains autosave configuration data, which is found in the `/var/opt/SUNWldm/autosave-autosave-name` directories.

You can use the `tar` or `cpio` command to save and restore the entire contents of the directories.

Note – Each autosave directory includes a timestamp for the last SP configuration update for the related configuration. If you restore the autosave files, the timestamp might be out of sync. In this case, the restored autosave configurations are shown in their previous state, either [newer] or up to date.

For more information about autosave configurations, see “[Managing Logical Domains Configurations](#)” on page 184.

▼ Save and Restore Autosave Directories

This procedure shows how to save and restore the autosave directories.

1 Save the autosave directories.

```
# cd /  
# tar -cvf autosave.tar var/opt/SUNWldm/autosave-*
```

2 (Optional) Remove the existing autosave directories to ensure a clean restore operation.

Sometimes an autosave directory might include extraneous files, perhaps left over from a previous configuration, that might corrupt the configuration that was downloaded to the SP. In such cases, clean the autosave directory prior to the restore operation as shown in this example:

```
# cd /
# rm -rf var/opt/SUNWldm/autosave-*
```

3 Restore the autosave directories.

These commands restore the files and directories in the `/var/opt/SUNWldm` directory.

```
# cd /
# tar -xvf autosave.tar
```

Saving and Restoring the Logical Domains Constraints Database File

Whenever you upgrade the operating system on the control domain, you must save and restore the Logical Domains constraints database file that can be found in `/var/opt/SUNWldm/ldom-db.xml`.

Note – Also, save and restore the `/var/opt/SUNWldm/ldom-db.xml` file when you perform any other operation that is destructive to the control domain's file data, such as a disk swap.

Preserving the Logical Domains Constraints Database File When Using Live Upgrade

If you are using live upgrade on the control domain, consider adding the following line to the `/etc/lu/synclist` file:

```
/var/opt/SUNWldm/ldom-db.xml    OVERWRITE
```

This causes the database to be copied automatically from the active boot environment to the new boot environment when switching boot environments. For more information about `/etc/lu/synclist` and synchronizing files between boot environments, refer to “Synchronizing Files Between Boot Environments” in *Solaris 10 5/09 Installation Guide: Solaris Live Upgrade and Upgrade Planning*.

Upgrading From Solaris 10 OS Older Than Solaris 10 5/08 OS

If the control domain is upgraded from a Solaris 10 OS version older than Solaris 10 5/08 OS (or without patch 127127-11), and if volume manager volumes were exported as virtual disks, then the virtual disk backends must be re-exported with `options=slice` after the Logical Domain Manager has been upgraded. See “Exporting Volumes and Backward Compatibility” on [page 102](#) for more information.

Upgrading the Logical Domains Manager and the System Firmware

This section shows how to upgrade to Logical Domains 1.2 software.

First download the Logical Domains Manager and the Solaris Security Toolkit on the control domain, see [“Downloading Logical Domains Manager and Solaris Security Toolkit” on page 41](#).

Then stop all domains (except the control domain) running on the platform:

▼ Stop All Domains Running on the Platform, Except the Control Domain

1 Bring down each domain to the `ok` prompt.

2 Issue the `stop-domain` subcommand from the control domain for each domain.

```
primary# ldm stop-domain ldom
```

3 Issue the `unbind-domain` subcommand from the control domain for each domain.

```
primary# ldm unbind-domain ldom
```

Upgrading to Logical Domains 1.2 Software

This section shows how to upgrade to Logical Domains 1.2 software.

Perform the procedure [“Upgrade From LDoms 1.0 Software” on page 36](#) if you want to use your existing LDoms 1.0 configurations with Logical Domains 1.2 software. Existing LDoms 1.0 configurations do *not* work with Logical Domains 1.2 software.

If you are upgrading from LDoms 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, or 1.1 software, perform the procedure [“Upgrade From LDoms 1.0.x or 1.1” on page 38](#). Existing LDoms 1.0.1, 1.0.2, 1.0.3, and 1.1 configurations *do* work with Logical Domains 1.2 software.

▼ Upgrade From LDoms 1.0 Software

Existing Logical Domains 1.0 configurations do *not* work with Logical Domains 1.2 software, so you need to save your Logical Domains 1.0 configurations before the upgrade to use them in Logical Domains 1.2 software. The following procedure describes a method for saving and rebuilding a configuration using XML constraints files and the `-i` option to the `ldm add-domain` command.

The basic process is to save the constraints information for each domain into an XML file, which can then be re-issued to the Logical Domains Manager after the upgrade to rebuild a desired configuration.

The procedure in this section works for guest domains, not the control domain. Although you can save the control (primary) domain's constraints to an XML file, you cannot feed it back into the `ldm add-domain -i` command. However, you can use the resource constraints from the XML file to create the CLI commands to reconfigure your primary domain. See [“Rebuilding the Control Domain” on page 73](#) for instructions on how to translate typical XML output from an `ldm list-constraints -x primary` command into the CLI commands needed to reconfigure a primary domain.

The method that follows does not preserve actual bindings, only the constraints used to create those bindings. This means that, after this procedure, the domains will have the same virtual resources, but will not necessarily be bound to the same physical resources.

1 For each domain, create an XML file containing the domain's constraints.

```
# ldm list-constraints -x ldom > ldom.xml
```

2 List all the logical domain configurations stored on the service processor.

```
# ldm list-config
```

3 Remove each logical domain configuration stored on the service processor.

```
# ldm rm-config config-name
```

4 Disable the Logical Domains Manager daemon (ldmd).

```
# svcadm disable ldmd
```

5 Remove the Logical Domains Manager package (SUNWldm).

```
# pkgrm SUNWldm
```

6 Remove the Solaris Security Toolkit package (SUNWjass).

```
# pkgrm SUNWjass
```

7 Flash update the system firmware.

For the entire procedure, see [“Upgrade System Firmware” on page 39](#) or [“Upgrade System Firmware Without an FTP Server” on page 40](#).

8 Reinstall the Logical Domain Manager and the Solaris Security Toolkit.

See [“Installing the Logical Domains Manager and Solaris Security Toolkit” on page 41](#).

9 Reconfigure the primary domain manually.

For instructions, see [“Set Up the Control Domain” on page 62](#).

10 Run the following commands for each guest domain's XML file you created in Step 1.

```
# ldm add-domain -i ldom.xml
# ldm bind-domain ldom
# ldm start-domain ldom
```

▼ Upgrade From LDoms 1.0.x or 1.1**1 Flash update the system firmware.**

For the entire procedure, see “Upgrade System Firmware” on page 39 or “Upgrade System Firmware Without an FTP Server” on page 40.

2 Disable the Logical Domains Manager daemon (ldmd).

```
# svcadm disable ldmd
```

3 Remove the old SUNWldm package.

```
# pkgrm SUNWldm
```

4 Add the new SUNWldm package.

Specifying the `-d` option assumes that the package is in the current directory.

```
# pkgadd -Gd . SUNWldm
```

5 Use the `ldm list` command to verify that the Logical Domains Manager is running.

The `ldm list` command should list all domains that are currently defined on the system. In particular, the primary domain should be listed and be in the active state. The following sample output shows that only the primary domain is defined on the system.

```
# ldm list
NAME           STATE   FLAGS   CONS   VCPU  MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
primary        active ---c-  SP     32    3264M  0.3%  19d 9m
```

Installing Logical Domains Software on a New System

Sun platforms supporting Logical Domains software come preinstalled with the Solaris 10 OS. Initially, the Logical Domains software is not enabled, and the platform appears as a single system hosting only one operating system. After the Solaris OS, system firmware, and Logical Domains Manager have been installed, the original system and instance of the Solaris OS become the control domain. That first domain of the platform is named `primary`, and you cannot change that name or destroy that domain. From there, the platform can be reconfigured to have multiple domains hosting different instances of the Solaris OS.

Updating the Solaris OS

On a brand new system, you may want to reinstall the OS so that it conforms to your installation policy. In that case, refer to “[Required and Recommended Solaris OS](#)” in *Logical Domains 1.2 Release Notes* to find the Solaris 10 OS that you should use for this version of the Logical Domains software. Refer to your Solaris 10 OS installation guide for complete instructions for installing the Solaris OS. You can tailor your installation to the needs of your system.

If your system is already installed then it needs to be upgraded to the appropriate Solaris 10 OS that should be used for this version of the Logical Domains software. Refer to “[Required Software and Patches](#)” in *Logical Domains 1.2 Release Notes* to find the Solaris 10 OS that you should use for this version of the Logical Domains software and the required and recommended patches. Refer to the [Solaris 10 5/09 Release and Installation Collection](http://docs.sun.com/app/docs/coll/1236.10) (<http://docs.sun.com/app/docs/coll/1236.10>) for complete instructions for upgrading the Solaris OS.

Upgrading the System Firmware

▼ Upgrade System Firmware

You can find system firmware for your platform at the [SunSolve site](http://sunsolve.sun.com) (<http://sunsolve.sun.com>).

Refer to “[Required System Firmware Patches](#)” in *Logical Domains 1.2 Release Notes* for required system firmware by supported servers.

This procedure describes how to upgrade system firmware using the `flashupdate` command on your service processor.

- If you do not have access to a local FTP server, see “[Upgrade System Firmware Without an FTP Server](#)” on page 40.
- If you want to update the system firmware from the control domain, refer to your system firmware release notes.

Refer to the administration guides or product notes for the supported servers for more information about installing and updating system firmware for these servers.

- 1 **Shut down and power off the host server from either management port connected to the service processor: serial or network.**

```
# shutdown -i5 -g0 -y
```

- 2 **Use the `flashupdate` command to upgrade the system firmware, depending on your server.**

Refer to your platform documentation for information about how to update your firmware.

The following shows a sample `flashupdate` command:

```
sc> flashupdate -s IP-address -f path/Sun_System_Firmware-
x_x_x_build_nn-server-name.bin
username: your-userid
password: your-password
```

Where:

- *IP-address* is the IP address of your FTP server.
- *path* is the location in SunSolveSM or your own directory where you can obtain the system firmware image.
- *x_x_x* is the version number of the System Firmware.
- *nn* is the number of the build that applies to this release.
- *server-name* is the name of your server. For example, the *server-name* for the Sun FireTM T2000 server is `Sun_Fire_T2000`.

3 Reset the service processor.

```
sc> resetsc -y
```

4 Power on and boot the host server.

```
sc> poweron -c
ok boot disk
```

▼ Upgrade System Firmware Without an FTP Server

If you do not have access to a local FTP server to upload firmware to the service processor, you can use the `sysfwdownload` utility, which is provided with your system firmware upgrade package on the SunSolve site:

<http://sunsolve.sun.com>

1 Run the following commands within the Solaris OS.

```
# cd firmware_location
# sysfwdownload system_firmware_file
```

2 Shut down the Solaris OS instance.

```
# shutdown -i5 -g0 -y
```

3 Power off the system and update the firmware.

```
sc> poweroff -fy
sc> flashupdate -s 127.0.0.1
```

4 Reset the service processor and power on the system.

```
sc> resetsc -y
sc> poweron
```

Downloading Logical Domains Manager and Solaris Security Toolkit

▼ Download the Software

1 Download the zip file (LDoms_Manager-1_2.zip) from the Sun Software Download site.

You can find the software at <http://www.sun.com/ldoms>.

2 Unzip the zip file.

```
$ unzip LDoms_Manager-1_2.zip
```

The Logical Domains Manager and the Solaris Security Toolkit are bundled in the same zip file. Refer to “Location of LDoms 1.2 Software” in *Logical Domains 1.2 Release Notes* for details about the structure of the file and what it includes.

Installing the Logical Domains Manager and Solaris Security Toolkit

There are three methods of installing Logical Domains Manager and Solaris Security Toolkit software:

- Using the installation script to install the packages and patches. This automatically installs both the Logical Domains Manager and the Solaris Security Toolkit software. See “[Installing the Logical Domains Manager and Solaris Security Toolkit Software Automatically](#)” on page 42.
- Using JumpStart to install the packages. See “[Using JumpStart to Install the Logical Domains Manager 1.2 and Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 Software](#)” on page 47.
- Installing each package manually. See “[Installing Logical Domains Manager and Solaris Security Toolkit Software Manually](#)” on page 50.

Note – Remember that you need to manually install the LDoms MIB software package after you install the Logical Domains and Solaris Security Toolkit packages. It is not automatically installed with the other packages. Refer to the *Logical Domains (LDoms) MIB 1.0.1 Administration Guide* for more information about installing and using the LDoms MIB.

Installing the Logical Domains Manager and Solaris Security Toolkit Software Automatically

If you use the `install-ldm` installation script, you have several choices to specify how you want the script to run. Each choice is described in the procedures that follow.

- **Using the `install-ldm` script with no options does the following automatically:**
 - Checks that the Solaris OS release is Solaris 10 5/09 OS at a minimum
 - Verifies that the package subdirectories `SUNWldm/` and `SUNWjass/` are present
 - Verifies that the prerequisite Solaris Logical Domains driver packages, `SUNWldomr` and `SUNWldomu`, are present
 - Verifies that the `SUNWldm` and `SUNWjass` packages have not been installed

Note – If the script does detect a previous version of `SUNWjass` during installation, you must remove it. You do *not* need to undo any previous hardening of your Solaris OS.

- Installs the Logical Domains Manager 1.2 software (`SUNWldm` package)
- Installs the Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 software including required patches (`SUNWjass` package)
- Verifies that all packages are installed
- Enables the Logical Domains Manager daemon, `ldmd`
- Hardens the Solaris OS on the control domain with the Solaris Security Toolkit `ldm_control-secure.driver` or one of the other drivers ending in `-secure.driver` that you select.
- **Using the `install-ldm` script with option `-d` allows you to specify a Solaris Security Toolkit driver other than a driver ending with `-secure.driver`.** This option automatically performs all the functions listed in the preceding choice and hardens the Solaris OS on the control domain with the Solaris Security Toolkit customized driver that you specify; for example, the `server-secure-myname.driver`.
- **Using the `install-ldm` script with option `-d` and specifying none specifies that you do *not* want to harden the Solaris OS running on your control domain by using the Solaris Security Toolkit.** This option automatically performs all the functions except hardening listed in the preceding choices. Bypassing the use of the Solaris Security Toolkit is not suggested and should only be done when you intend to harden your control domain using an alternate process.
- **Using the `install-ldm` script with option `-p` specifies that you only want to perform the post-installation actions of enabling the Logical Domains Manager daemon (`ldmd`) and running the Solaris Security Toolkit.** For example, you would use this option if the `SUNWldm` and `SUNWjass` packages are preinstalled on your server. See [“Enable the Logical Domains Manager Daemon and Run the Solaris Security Toolkit Only”](#) on page 47

▼ Install With No Special Options

- **Run the `install-ldm` installation script with no options.**

The installation script is part of the `SUNWldm` package and is in the `Install` subdirectory.

```
# Install/install-ldm
```

- a. **If one or more packages are previously installed, you receive this message.**

```
# Install/install-ldm
```

```
ERROR: One or more packages are already installed: SUNWldm SUNWjass.
If packages SUNWldm.v and SUNWjass are factory pre-installed, run
install-ldm -p to perform post-install actions. Otherwise remove the
package(s) and restart install-ldm.
```

If you want to perform post-installation actions only, go to [“Enable the Logical Domains Manager Daemon and Run the Solaris Security Toolkit Only” on page 47.](#)

- b. **If the process is successful, you receive messages similar to those in the following examples.**

- [Example 3–1](#) shows a successful run of the `install-ldm` script if you choose the following default security profile:

- a) Hardened Solaris configuration for LDoms (recommended)

- [Example 3–2](#) shows a successful run of the `install-ldm` script if you choose the following security profile:

- c) Your custom-defined Solaris security configuration profile

The drivers that are displayed for you to choose are drivers ending with `-secure.driver`. If you write a customized driver that does not end with `-secure.driver`, you must specify your customized driver with the `install-ldm -d` option. (See [“Install With a Customized Hardening Driver” on page 45.](#))

Example 3–1 Output From Hardened Solaris Configuration for LDoms

```
# Install/install-ldm
```

```
Welcome to the LDoms installer.
```

```
You are about to install the domain manager package that will enable
you to create, destroy and control other domains on your system. Given
the capabilities of the domain manager, you can now change the security
configuration of this Solaris instance using the Solaris Security
Toolkit.
```

```
Select a security profile from this list:
```

- a) Hardened Solaris configuration for LDoms (recommended)

- b) Standard Solaris configuration

c) Your custom-defined Solaris security configuration profile

Enter a, b, or c [a]: a

The changes made by selecting this option can be undone through the Solaris Security Toolkit's undo feature. This can be done with the `'/opt/SUNWjass/bin/jass-execute -u'` command.

Installing LDoms and Solaris Security Toolkit packages.

```
pkgadd -n -d "/var/tmp/install/Product/Logical_Domain_Manager" -a pkg_admin SUNWldm.v
Copyright 2006 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Use is subject to license terms.
```

Installation of <SUNWldm> was successful.

```
pkgadd -n -d "/var/tmp/install/Product/Solaris_Security_Toolkit" -a pkg_admin SUNWjass
Copyright 2005 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Use is subject to license terms.
```

Installation of <SUNWjass> was successful.

```
Verifying that all packages are fully installed. OK.
Enabling services: svc:/ldoms/ldmd:default
Running Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2.0 driver ldm_control-secure.driver.
Please wait. . .
/opt/SUNWjass/bin/jass-execute -q -d ldm_control-secure.driver
Executing driver, ldm_control-secure.driver
Solaris Security Toolkit hardening executed successfully; log file
/var/opt/SUNWjass/run/20070208142843/jass-install-log.txt. It will not
take effect until the next reboot. Before rebooting, make sure SSH or
the serial line is setup for use after the reboot.
```

Example 3-2 Output From Choosing Customized Configuration Profile

```
# Install/install-ldm
```

```
Welcome to the LDoms installer.
```

You are about to install the domain manager package that will enable you to create, destroy and control other domains on your system. Given the capabilities of the domain manager, you can now change the security configuration of this Solaris instance using the Solaris Security Toolkit.

Select a security profile from this list:

- a) Hardened Solaris configuration for LDoms (recommended)
- b) Standard Solaris configuration
- c) Your custom-defined Solaris security configuration profile

Enter a, b, or c [a]: c

Choose a Solaris Security Toolkit .driver configuration profile from this list

- 1) ldm_control-secure.driver
- 2) secure.driver
- 3) server-secure.driver
- 4) suncluster3x-secure.driver
- 5) sunfire_15k_sc-secure.driver

Enter a number 1 to 5: 2

The driver you selected may not perform all the LDoms-specific operations specified in the LDoms Administration Guide.

Is this OK (yes/no)? [no] y

The changes made by selecting this option can be undone through the Solaris Security Toolkit's undo feature. This can be done with the '/opt/SUNWjass/bin/jass-execute -u' command.

Installing LDoms and Solaris Security Toolkit packages.

```
pkgadd -n -d "/var/tmp/install/Product/Logical_Domain_Manager" -a pkg_admin SUNWldm.v
Copyright 2006 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Use is subject to license terms.
```

Installation of <SUNWldm> was successful.

```
pkgadd -n -d "/var/tmp/install/Product/Solaris_Security_Toolkit" -a pkg_admin SUNWjass
Copyright 2005 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Use is subject to license terms.
```

Installation of <SUNWjass> was successful.

Verifying that all packages are fully installed. OK.

Enabling services: svc:/ldoms/ldmd:default

Running Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2.0 driver secure.driver.

Please wait. . .

```
/opt/SUNWjass/bin/jass-execute -q -d secure.driver
```

Executing driver, secure.driver

Solaris Security Toolkit hardening executed successfully; log file /var/opt/SUNWjass/run/20070102142843/jass-install-log.txt. It will not take effect until the next reboot. Before rebooting, make sure SSH or the serial line is setup for use after the reboot.

▼ Install With a Customized Hardening Driver

- Run the `install-ldm` installation script with the `-d` option to specify a Solaris Security Toolkit customized hardening driver; for example, `server-secure-myname.driver`.

The installation script is part of the `SUNWldm` package and is in the `Install` subdirectory.

```
# Install/install-ldm -d server-secure-myname.driver
```

If the process is successful, you receive messages similar to those in the following example:

Example 3-3 Output From Successful Run of the `install-ldm -d` Script

```
# Install/install-ldm -d server-secure.driver
```

The driver you selected may not perform all the LDoms-specific operations specified in the LDoms Administration Guide.

Installing LDoms and Solaris Security Toolkit packages.

```
pkgadd -n -d "/var/tmp/install/Product/Logical_Domain_Manager" -a pkg_admin SUNWldm.v
```

Copyright 2006 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.

Use is subject to license terms.

Installation of <SUNWldm> was successful.

```
pkgadd -n -d "/var/tmp/install/Product/Solaris_Security_Toolkit" -a pkg_admin SUNWjass
```

Copyright 2005 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.

Use is subject to license terms.

Installation of <SUNWjass> was successful.

Verifying that all packages are fully installed. OK.

Enabling services: svc:/ldoms/ldmd:default

Running Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2.0 driver server-secure-myname.driver.

Please wait. . .

```
/opt/SUNWjass/bin/jass-execute -q -d server-secure-myname.driver
```

Executing driver, server-secure-myname.driver

Solaris Security Toolkit hardening executed successfully; log file

```
/var/opt/SUNWjass/run/20061114143128/jass-install-log.txt. It will not
```

take effect until the next reboot. Before rebooting, make sure SSH or

the serial line is setup for use after the reboot.

▼ Install and Do Not Harden Your System

- **Run the `install-ldm` installation script with the `-d none` option to specify *not* to harden your system using a Solaris Security Toolkit driver.**

The installation script is part of the SUNWldm package and is in the `Install` subdirectory.

```
# Install/install-ldm -d none
```

If the process is successful, you receive messages similar to those in the following example:

Example 3-4 Output From Successful Run of the `install-ldm -d none` Script

```
# Install/install-ldm -d none
```

Installing LDoms and Solaris Security Toolkit packages.

```
pkgadd -n -d "/var/tmp/install/Product/Logical_Domain_Manager" -a pkg_admin SUNWldm.v
```

Copyright 2006 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.

Use is subject to license terms.

Installation of <SUNWldm> was successful.

```
pkgadd -n -d "/var/tmp/install/Product/Solaris_Security_Toolkit" -a pkg_admin SUNWjass
```

Copyright 2005 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Use is subject to license terms.

Installation of <SUNWjass> was successful.

Verifying that all packages are fully installed. OK.
Enabling services: svc:/ldoms/ldmd:default
Solaris Security Toolkit was not applied. Bypassing the use of the
Solaris Security Toolkit is not recommended and should only be
performed when alternative hardening steps are to be taken.

▼ Enable the Logical Domains Manager Daemon and Run the Solaris Security Toolkit Only

You might use this option if the SUNWldm and SUNWjass packages are preinstalled on your server and you want to perform the post-installation actions of enabling the Logical Domains Manager daemon (ldmd) and running the Solaris Security Toolkit.

- **Run the `install-ldm` installation script with the `-p` option to perform only the post-installation actions of enabling `ldmd` and running the Solaris Security Toolkit to harden your system.**

```
# Install/install-ldm -p
Verifying that all packages are fully installed. OK.
Enabling services: svc:/ldoms/ldmd:default
Running Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2.0 driver ldm_control-secure.driver.
Please wait. . .
/opt/SUNWjass/bin/jass-execute -q -d ldm_control-secure.driver
Solaris Security Toolkit hardening executed successfully; log file
var/opt/SUNWjass/run/20070515140944/jass-install-log.txt. It will not
take effect until the next reboot. Before rebooting, make sure SSH or
the serial line is setup for use after the reboot.
```

Using JumpStart to Install the Logical Domains Manager 1.2 and Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 Software

Refer to *JumpStart Technology: Effective Use in the Solaris Operating Environment* for complete information about using JumpStart.



Caution – Do *not* disconnect from the virtual console during a network installation.

▼ Set Up a JumpStart Server

- If you have already set up a JumpStart server, proceed to [“Install Using JumpStart Software” on page 48](#) of this administration guide.
- If you have not already set up a JumpStart server, you must do so.

Refer to the *Solaris 10 5/09 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations* for complete information about this procedure.

- 1 **Refer to the *Solaris 10 5/09 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.**
Perform the following steps.

- a. **See “Task Map: Preparing Custom JumpStart Installations” in *Solaris 10 5/09 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.**
- b. **Set up networked systems with the procedures in “Creating a Profile Server for Network Systems.”**
- c. **Create the `rules` file with the procedure in “Creating the `rules` File.”**

- 2 **Validate the `rules` file with the procedure in “Validating the `rules` File.”**

The Solaris Security Toolkit provides profiles and finish scripts. Refer to the *Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 Reference Manual* for more information about profiles and finish scripts.

▼ Install Using JumpStart Software

- 1 **Change to the directory where you have downloaded the Solaris Security Toolkit package (SUNWjass).**

```
# cd /path-to-download
```

- 2 **Install SUNWjass so that it creates the JumpStart (`jumpstart`) directory structure.**

```
# pkgadd -R /jumpstart -d . SUNWjass
```

- 3 **Use your text editor to modify the `/jumpstart/opt/SUNWjass/Sysidcfg/Solaris_10/sysidcfg` file to reflect your network environment.**

- 4 **Copy the `/jumpstart/opt/SUNWjass/Drivers/user.init.SAMPLE` file to the `/jumpstart/opt/SUNWjass/Drivers/user.init` file.**

```
# cp user.init.SAMPLE user.init
```

- 5 **Edit the `user.init` file to reflect your paths.**

- 6 **To install the Solaris Security Toolkit package (SUNWjass) onto the target system during a JumpStart install, you must place the package in the `JASS_PACKAGE_MOUNT` directory defined in your `user.init` file. For example:**

```
# cp -r /path/to/LDoms_Manager-1_0_2/Product/SUNWjass /jumpstart/opt/SUNWjass/Packages
```

- 7 To install the Logical Domains Manager package (SUNWldm.v) onto the target system during a JumpStart install, you must place the package from the download area in the JASS_PACKAGE_MOUNT directory defined in your user.init file. For example:**

```
# cp -r /path/to/LDoms_Manager-1_0_2/Product/SUNWldm.v /jumpstart/opt/SUNWjass/Packages
```

- 8 If you experience problems with a multihomed JumpStart server, modify the two entries in the user.init file for JASS_PACKAGE_MOUNT and JASS_PATCH_MOUNT to the correct path to the JASS_HOME_DIR/Patches and JASS_HOME_DIR/Packages directories. Refer to the comments in the user.init.SAMPLE file for more information.**

- 9 Use the ldm_control-secure.driver as the basic driver for the Logical Domains Manager control domain.**

Refer to Chapter 4 in the *Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 Reference Manual* for information about how to modify the driver for your use. The main driver in the Solaris Security Toolkit that is the counterpart to the ldm_control-secure.driver is the secure.driver.

- 10 After completing the modifications to the ldm_control-secure.driver, make the correct entry in the rules file.**

- If you want to minimize the LDoms control domain, specify the minimal-ldm-control.profile in your rules file similar to the following:

```
hostname imbulu - Profiles/minimal-ldm_control.profile
Drivers/ldm_control-secure-abc.driver
```

Note – You must manually install the LDoms MIB software package after you install the LDoms and Solaris Security Toolkit packages. They are not automatically installed with the other packages.

- If you do not want to minimize the LDoms control domain, your entry should be similar to the following:

```
hostname imbulu - Profiles/oem.profile Drivers/ldm_control-secure-abc.driver
```

- 11 If you undo hardening during a JumpStart install, you must run the following SMF command to restart the Logical Domains Manager.**

```
# svcadm enable svc:/ldoms/ldmd:default
```

Installing Logical Domains Manager and Solaris Security Toolkit Software Manually

Perform the following procedures to install the Logical Domains Manager and Solaris Security Toolkit Software manually:

- “Install the Logical Domains Manager (LDoms) 1.2 Software Manually” on page 50.
- “(Optional) Install the Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 Software Manually” on page 50.
- “(Optional) Harden the Control Domain Manually” on page 51.

▼ Install the Logical Domains Manager (LDoms) 1.2 Software Manually

Before You Begin Download the Logical Domains Manager 1.2 software, the SUNWldm package, from the Sun Software Download site. See “[Download the Software](#)” on page 41 for specific instructions.

- 1 Use the `pkgadd(1M)` command to install the `SUNWldm.v` package. Use the `-G` option to install the package in the global zone only and the `-d` option to specify the path to the directory that contains the `SUNWldm.v` package.

```
# pkgadd -G . SUNWldm.v
```

- 2 Answer `y` for yes to all questions in the interactive prompts.

- 3 Use the `pkginfo(1)` command to verify that the `SUNWldm` package for Logical Domains Manager 1.2 software is installed.

The revision (REV) information shown below is an example.

```
# pkginfo -l SUNWldm | grep VERSION
VERSION=1.2,REV=2007.08.23.10.20
```

▼ (Optional) Install the Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 Software Manually

If you want to secure your system, download and install the `SUNWjass` package. The required patches (122608-03 and 125672-01) are included in the `SUNWjass` package. See “[Download the Software](#)” on page 41 for specific instructions about downloading the software.

See [Chapter 2, “Security,”](#) in this document for more information about security considerations when using Logical Domains Manager software. For further reference, you can find Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 documentation at:

<http://docs.sun.com>

- 1 Use the `pkgadd(1M)` command to install the `SUNWjass` package.

```
# pkgadd -d . SUNWjass
```

- 2 Use the `pkginfo(1)` command to verify that the `SUNWjass` package for Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 software is installed.

```
# pkginfo -l SUNWjass | grep VERSION
VERSION: 4.2.0
```

▼ (Optional) Harden the Control Domain Manually

Perform this procedure only if you have installed the Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 package.

Note – When you use the Solaris Security Toolkit to harden the control domain, you disable many system services and place certain restrictions on network access. Refer to [“Related Documentation” on page 13](#) to find Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 documentation for more information.

- 1 Harden using the `ldm_control-secure.driver`.

```
# /opt/SUNWjass/bin/jass-execute -d ldm_control-secure.driver
```

You can use other drivers to harden your system. You can also customize drivers to tune the security of your environment. Refer to the *Solaris Security Toolkit 4.2 Reference Manual* for more information about drivers and customizing them.

- 2 Answer `y` for yes to all questions in the interactive prompts.
- 3 Shut down and reboot your server for the hardening to take place.

```
# /usr/sbin/shutdown -y -g0 -i6
```

▼ Validate Hardening

- Check whether the Logical Domains hardening driver (`ldm_control-secure.driver`) applied hardening correctly.

If you want to check on another driver, substitute that driver's name in this command example.

```
# /opt/SUNWjass/bin/jass-execute -a ldm_control-secure.driver
```

▼ Undo Hardening

- 1 Undo the configuration changes applied by the Solaris Security Toolkit.

```
# /opt/SUNWjass/bin/jass-execute -u
```

The Solaris Security Toolkit asks you which hardening runs you want to undo.

- 2 Select the hardening runs you want to undo.

3 Reboot the system so that the unhardened configuration takes place.

```
# /usr/sbin/shutdown -y -g0 -i6
```

Note – If you undo hardening that was performed during a JumpStart installation, you must run the following SMF commands to restart the Logical Domains Manager daemon (`ldmd`) and the virtual network terminal server daemon (`vntsd`).

```
# svcadm enable svc:/ldoms/ldmd:default
```

Enabling the Logical Domains Manager Daemon

The `install-ldm` installation script automatically enables the Logical Domains Manager daemon (`ldmd`). The `ldmd` daemon is also automatically enabled when the `SUNWldm` package is installed. When enabled, you can create, modify, and control the logical domains.

▼ Enable the Logical Domains Manager Daemon

Use this procedure to enable the `ldmd` daemon if it has been disabled.

1 Use the `svcadm(1M)` command to enable the Logical Domains Manager daemon, `ldmd`.

```
# svcadm enable ldmd
```

2 Use the `ldm list` command to verify that the Logical Domains Manager is running.

The `ldm list` command should list all domains that are currently defined on the system. In particular, the primary domain should be listed and be in the active state. The following sample output shows that only the primary domain is defined on the system.

```
# /opt/SUNWldm/bin/ldm list
NAME          STATE  FLAGS  CONS  VCPU  MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
primary      active ---c-  SP    32    3264M  0.3%  19d 9m
```

Creating Authorization and Profiles and Assigning Roles for User Accounts

You set up authorization and profiles and assign roles for user accounts using the Solaris OS Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) adapted for the Logical Domains Manager. Refer to the [Solaris 10 System Administrator Collection \(http://docs.sun.com/app/docs/coll/47.16\)](http://docs.sun.com/app/docs/coll/47.16) for more information about RBAC.

Authorization for the Logical Domains Manager has two levels:

- Read – allows you to view, but not modify the configuration.
- Read and write – allows you to view and change the configuration.

Following are the Logical Domains entries automatically added to the Solaris OS `/etc/security/auth_attr` file:

- `solaris.ldoms.:::LDom administration::`
- `solaris.ldoms.grant:::Delegate LDom configuration::`
- `solaris.ldoms.read:::View LDom configuration::`
- `solaris.ldoms.write:::Manage LDom configuration::`

Managing User Authorizations

▼ Add an Authorization for a User

Use the following steps as necessary to add authorizations in the `/etc/security/auth_attr` file for Logical Domains Manager users. Because the superuser already has `solaris.*` authorization, the superuser already has permission for `solaris.ldoms.*` authorizations.

- 1 **Create a local user account for each user who needs authorization to use the `ldm(1M)` subcommands.**

Note – To add Logical Domains Manager authorization for a user, a local (non-LDAP) account must be created for that user. Refer to the [Solaris 10 System Administrator Collection](http://docs.sun.com/app/docs/doc/1147.16) (<http://docs.sun.com/app/docs/doc/1147.16>) for details.

- 2 **Do one of the following depending on which `ldm(1M)` subcommands you want the user to be able to access.**

See [Table 2-1](#) for a list of `ldm(1M)` commands and their user authorizations.

- Add a read-only authorization for a user using the `usermod(1M)` command.

```
# usermod -A solaris.ldoms.read username
```

- Add a read and write authorization for a user using the `usermod(1M)` command.

```
# usermod -A solaris.ldoms.write username
```

▼ Delete All Authorizations for a User

- **Delete all authorizations for a local user account (the only possible option).**

```
# usermod -A '' username
```

Managing User Profiles

The SUNWldm package adds two system-defined RBAC profiles in the `/etc/security/prof_attr` file for use in authorizing access to the Logical Domains Manager by non-superusers. The two LDom-specific profiles are:

- LDom Review::`Review LDom configuration:auths=solaris.ldoms.read`
- LDom Management::`Manage LDom domains:auths=solaris.ldoms.*`

One of the preceding profiles can be assigned to a user account using the following procedure.

▼ Add a Profile for a User

- Add an administrative profile for a local user account; for example, LDom Management.

```
# usermod -P "LDom Management" username
```

▼ Delete All Profiles for a User

- Delete all profiles for a local user account (the only possible option).

```
# usermod -P '' username
```

Assigning Roles to Users

The advantage of using this procedure is that only a user who has been assigned a specific role can assume the role. In assuming a role, a password is required if the role is given a password. This provides two layers of security. If a user has not been assigned a role, then the user cannot assume the role (by doing the `su role-name` command) even if the user has the correct password.

▼ Create a Role and Assign the Role to a User

- 1 Create a role.

```
# roleadd -A solaris.ldoms.read ldm_read
```

- 2 Assign a password to the role.

```
# passwd ldm_read
```

- 3 Assign the role to a user; for example, `user_1`.

```
# useradd -R ldm_read user_1
```

- 4 Assign a password to the user (`user_1`).

```
# passwd user_1
```

- 5 **Assign access only to the `user_1` account to become the `ldm_read` account.**

```
# su user_1
```

- 6 **Type the user password when or if prompted.**

- 7 **Verify the user ID and access to the `ldm_read` role.**

```
$ id
uid=nn(user_1) gid=nn(<group name>)
$ roles
ldm_read
```

- 8 **Provide access to the user for `ldm` subcommands that have read authorization.**

```
# su ldm_read
```

- 9 **Type the user password when or if prompted.**

- 10 **Type the `id` command to show the user.**

```
$ id
uid=nn(ldm_read) gid=nn(<group name>)
```

Factory Default Configuration and Disabling Logical Domains

The initial configuration where the platform appears as a single system hosting only one operating system is called the factory default configuration. If you want to disable logical domains, you probably also want to restore this configuration so that the system regains access to all resources (CPUs, memory, I/O), which might have been assigned to other domains.

This section describes how to remove all guest domains, remove all Logical Domains configurations, and revert the configuration to the factory default.

▼ Remove All Guest Logical Domains

- 1 **List all the logical domain configurations that are stored on the service processor.**

```
primary# ldm list-config
```

- 2 **Remove all configurations (*config-name*) previously saved to the service processor (SP) except for the `factory-default` configuration.**

Use the following command for each such configuration.

```
primary# ldm rm-config config-name
```

After you remove all the configurations previously saved to the SP, the `factory-default` domain would be the next one to use when the control domain (`primary`) is rebooted.

- 3 Stop all domains by using the `-a` option.

```
primary# ldm stop-domain -a
```

- 4 Unbind all domains except for the primary domain.

```
primary# ldm unbind-domain ldom
```

Note – You might not be able to unbind an I/O domain in a split-PCI configuration if it is providing services required by the control domain. In this situation, skip this step.

▼ Restore the Factory Default Configuration

- 1 Select the factory default configuration.

```
primary# ldm set-config factory-default
```

- 2 Stop the control domain.

```
primary# shutdown -i1 -g0 -y
```

- 3 Powercycle the system so that the factory-default configuration is loaded.

```
sc> poweroff
```

```
sc> poweron
```

▼ Disable the Logical Domains Manager

- Disable the Logical Domains Manager from the control domain.

```
primary# svcadm disable ldmd
```

Note – Disabling the Logical Domains Manager does not stop any running domains, but does disable the ability to create a new domains, change the configuration of existing domains, or monitor the state of the domains.



Caution – If you disable the Logical Domains Manager, this disables some services, such as error reporting or power management. In the case of error reporting, if you are in the factory-default configuration, you can reboot the sole domain to restore error reporting. However, this is not the case with power management. In addition, some system management or monitoring tools rely on the Logical Domains Manager.

▼ Removing the Logical Domains Manager

After restoring the factory default configuration and disabling the Logical Domains Manager, you can remove the Logical Domains Manager software.

- **Remove the Logical Domains Manager software.**

```
primary# pkgrm SUNWldm
```

Note – If you remove the Logical Domains Manager before restoring the factory default configuration, you can restore the factory default configuration from the service processor as shown in the following procedure.

▼ Restore the Factory Default Configuration From the Service Processor

If you remove the Logical Domains Manager before restoring the factory default configuration, you can restore the factory default configuration from the service processor.

- 1 **Restore the factory default configuration from the service processor.**

```
sc> bootmode config="factory-default"
```

- 2 **Powercycle the system to load the factory default configuration.**

Setting Up Services and Logical Domains

This chapter describes the procedures necessary to set up default services, your control domain, and guest domains.

You can also use the Logical Domains Configuration Assistant to configure logical domains and services. See [Appendix D, “Logical Domains Configuration Assistant.”](#)

This chapter covers the following topics:

- “Output Messages” on page 59
- “Creating Default Services” on page 60
- “Initial Configuration of the Control Domain” on page 62
- “Rebooting to Use Logical Domains” on page 63
- “Enabling Networking Between the Control/Service Domain and Other Domains” on page 63
- “Enabling the Virtual Network Terminal Server Daemon” on page 64
- “Creating and Starting a Guest Domain” on page 65
- “Installing Solaris OS on a Guest Domain” on page 68
- “Saving Logical Domain Configurations for Future Rebuilding” on page 72
- “Rebuilding the Control Domain” on page 73
- “Configuring Domain Dependencies” on page 80

Output Messages

You receive different output messages from the commands you use to create default services and to set up the control (primary) domain depending on your platform:

- Sun UltraSPARC T1 processors
- Sun UltraSPARC T2 and T2 Plus processors

Sun UltraSPARC T1 Processors

You receive the following notice after the setup commands for the primary domain if you are using a server with a Sun UltraSPARC T1 processor:

Notice: the LDom Manager is running in configuration mode. Any configuration changes made will only take effect after the machine configuration is downloaded to the system controller and the host is reset.

Sun UltraSPARC T2 and T2 Plus Processors

You receive the following message after the first operation that cannot be performed dynamically on any device or for any service on the primary domain if you are using a server with a Sun UltraSPARC T2 or T2 Plus processor:

Initiating delayed reconfigure operation on LDom primary. All configuration changes for other LDomS are disabled until the LDom reboots, at which time the new configuration for LDom primary will also take effect.

You receive the following notice after every subsequent operation on the primary domain until reboot if you are using a server with a Sun UltraSPARC T2 or T2 Plus processor:

Notice: LDom primary is in the process of a delayed reconfiguration. Any changes made to this LDom will only take effect after it reboots.

Creating Default Services

You must create the following virtual default services initially to be able to use them later:

- vdiskserver – virtual disk server
- vswitch – virtual switch service
- vconscon – virtual console concentrator service

▼ Create Default Services

1 Create a virtual disk server (vds) to allow importing virtual disks into a logical domain.

For example, the following command adds a virtual disk server (primary-vds0) to the control domain (primary).

```
primary# ldm add-vds primary-vds0 primary
```

2 Create a virtual console concentrator (vcc) service for use by the virtual network terminal server daemon (vntsd) and as a concentrator for all logical domain consoles.

For example, the following command would add a virtual console concentrator service (primary-vcc0) with a port range from 5000 to 5100 to the control domain (primary).

```
primary# ldm add-vcc port-range=5000-5100 primary-vcc0 primary
```

3 Create a virtual switch service (vsw) to enable networking between virtual network (vnet) devices in logical domains.

Assign a GLDv3-compliant network adapter to the virtual switch if each of the logical domains needs to communicate outside the box through the virtual switch.

For example, the following command would add a virtual switch service (primary-vsw0) on network adapter driver e1000g0 to the control domain (primary).

```
primary# ldm add-vsw net-dev=e1000g0 primary-vsw0 primary
```

This command automatically allocates a MAC address to the virtual switch. You can specify your own MAC address as an option to the `ldm add-vsw` command. However, in that case, it is your responsibility to ensure that the MAC address specified does not conflict with an already existing MAC address.

If the virtual switch being added replaces the underlying physical adapter as the primary network interface, it must be assigned the MAC address of the physical adapter, so that the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server assigns the domain the same IP address. See [“Enabling Networking Between the Control/Service Domain and Other Domains”](#) on page 63.

```
primary# ldm add-vsw mac-addr=2:04:4f:fb:9f:0d net-dev=e1000g0 primary-vsw0 primary
```

4 Verify the services have been created by using the `list-services` subcommand.

Your output should look similar to the following.

```
primary# ldm list-services primary
```

VDS

NAME	VOLUME	OPTIONS	DEVICE
primary-vds0			

VCC

NAME	PORT-RANGE
primary-vcc0	5000-5100

VSW

NAME	MAC	NET-DEV	DEVICE	MODE
primary-vsw0	02:04:4f:fb:9f:0d	e1000g0	switch@0	prog,promisc

Initial Configuration of the Control Domain

Initially, all system resources are allocated to the control domain. To allow the creation of other logical domains, you must release some of these resources.

▼ Set Up the Control Domain

Note – This procedure contains examples of resources to set for your control domain. These numbers are examples only, and the values used might not be appropriate for your control domain.

1 Determine whether you have cryptographic devices in the control domain.

```
primary# ldm list -o crypto primary
```

2 Assign cryptographic resources to the control domain.

Note – If you have any cryptographic devices in the control domain, you cannot dynamically reconfigure CPUs. So if you are not using cryptographic devices, set `-mau` to `0`.

The following example would assign one cryptographic resource to the control domain, `primary`. This leaves the remainder of the cryptographic resources available to a guest domain.

```
primary# ldm set-mau 1 primary
```

3 Assign virtual CPUs to the control domain.

For example, the following command would assign 4 virtual CPUs to the control domain, `primary`. This leaves the remainder of the virtual CPUs available to a guest domain.

```
primary# ldm set-vcpu 4 primary
```

4 Assign memory to the control domain.

For example, the following command would assign 4 gigabytes of memory to the control domain, `primary`. This leaves the remainder of the memory available to a guest domain.

```
primary# ldm set-memory 4G primary
```

5 Add a logical domain machine configuration to the service processor (SP).

For example, the following command would add a configuration called `initial`.

```
primary# ldm add-config initial
```

6 Verify that the configuration is ready to be used at the next reboot.

```
primary# ldm list-config
factory-default
initial [next poweron]
```

This list subcommand shows the `initial` configuration set will be used once you powercycle.

Rebooting to Use Logical Domains

You must reboot the control domain for the configuration changes to take effect and for the resources to be released for other logical domains to use.

▼ Reboot

- Shut down and reboot the control domain.

```
primary# shutdown -y -g0 -i6
```

Note – Either a reboot or powercycle instantiates the new configuration. Only a powercycle actually boots the configuration saved to the service processor (SP), which is then reflected in the `list-config` output.

Enabling Networking Between the Control/Service Domain and Other Domains

By default, networking between the control domain and other domains in the system is disabled. To enable this, the virtual switch device should be configured as a network device. The virtual switch can either replace the underlying physical device (`e1000g0` in this example) as the primary interface or be configured as an additional network interface in the domain.

Note – Perform the following procedure from the control domain's console, as the procedure could temporarily disrupt network connectivity to the domain.

▼ Configure the Virtual Switch as the Primary Interface

- 1 Print out the addressing information for all interfaces.

```
primary# ifconfig -a
```

- 2 **Plumb the virtual switch.** In this example, `vsw0` is the virtual switch being configured.

```
primary# ifconfig vsw0 plumb
```

- 3 **(Optional) To obtain the list of all virtual switch instances in a domain, you can list them.**

```
primary# /usr/sbin/dladm show-link | grep vsw
vsw0          type: non-vlan  mtu: 1500      device: vsw0
```

- 4 **Unplumb the physical network device assigned to the virtual switch (net-dev), which is `e1000g0` in this example.**

```
primary# ifconfig e1000g0 down unplumb
```

- 5 **To migrate properties of the physical network device (`e1000g0`) to the virtual switch (`vsw0`) device, do one of the following:**

- If networking is configured using a static IP address, reuse the IP address and netmask of `e1000g0` for `vsw0`.

```
primary# ifconfig vsw0 IP_of_e1000g0 netmask netmask_of_e1000g0 broadcast + up
```

- If networking is configured using DHCP, enable DHCP for `vsw0`.

```
primary# ifconfig vsw0 dhcp start
```

- 6 **Make the required configuration file modifications to make this change permanent.**

```
primary# mv /etc/hostname.e1000g0 /etc/hostname.vsw0
primary# mv /etc/dhcp.e1000g0 /etc/dhcp.vsw0
```

Note – If necessary, you can also configure the virtual switch as well as the physical network device. In this case, plumb the virtual switch as in Step 2, and do not unplumb the physical device (skip Step 4). You must then configure the virtual switch with either a static IP address or a dynamic IP address. You can obtain a dynamic IP address from a DHCP server. For additional information and an example of this case, see [“Configuring Virtual Switch and Service Domain for NAT and Routing”](#) on page 131.

Enabling the Virtual Network Terminal Server Daemon

You must enable the virtual network terminal server daemon (`vntsd`) to provide access to the virtual console of each logical domain. Refer to the [`vntsd\(1M\)`](#) man page for information about how to use this daemon.

▼ Enable the Virtual Network Terminal Server Daemon

Note – Be sure that you have created the default service `vconscon` (`vcc`) on the control domain before you enable `vntsd`. See [“Creating Default Services” on page 60](#) for more information.

- 1 Use the `svcadm(1M)` command to enable the virtual network terminal server daemon, `vntsd(1M)`.

```
primary# svcadm enable vntsd
```

- 2 Use the `svcs(1)` command to verify that the `vntsd` is enabled.

```
primary# svcs -l vntsd
fmri          svc:/ldoms/vntsd:default
enabled      true
state        online
next_state   none
state_time   Sat Jan 27 03:14:17 2007
logfile      /var/svc/log/ldoms-vntsd:default.log
restarter    svc:/system/svc/restarter:default
contract_id  93
dependency   optional_all/error svc:/milestone/network (online)
dependency   optional_all/none  svc:/system/system-log (online)
```

Creating and Starting a Guest Domain

The guest domain must run an operating system that understands both the sun4v platform and the virtual devices presented by the hypervisor. Currently, this means that you must run at least the Solaris 10 11/06 OS. Running the Solaris 10 5/09 OS provides you with all the Logical Domains 1.2 features. See the [Logical Domains 1.2 Release Notes](#) for any specific patches that might be necessary. Once you have created default services and reallocated resources from the control domain, you can create and start a guest domain.

▼ Create and Start a Guest Domain

- 1 Create a logical domain.

For example, the following command would create a guest domain named `ldg1`.

```
primary# ldm add-domain ldg1
```

- 2 Add CPUs to the guest domain.

For example, the following command would add four virtual CPUs to guest domain `ldg1`.

```
primary# ldm add-vcpu 4 ldg1
```

3 Add memory to the guest domain.

For example, the following command would add 2 gigabytes of memory to guest domain `ldg1`.

```
primary# ldm add-memory 2G ldg1
```

4 Add a virtual network device to the guest domain.

For example, the following command would add a virtual network device with these specifics to the guest domain `ldg1`.

```
primary# ldm add-vnet vnet1 primary-vsw0 ldg1
```

Where:

- `vnet1` is a unique interface name to the logical domain, assigned to this virtual network device instance for reference on subsequent `set -vnet` or `remove -vnet` subcommands.
- `primary-vsw0` is the name of an existing network service (virtual switch) to which to connect.

Note – Steps 5 and 6 are simplified instructions for adding a virtual disk server device (`vdsdev`) to the primary domain and a virtual disk (`vdisk`) to the guest domain. To learn how ZFS™ volumes and file systems can be used as virtual disks, see [“Export a ZFS Volume as a Single Slice Disk” on page 101](#) and [“Using ZFS With Virtual Disks” on page 110](#).

5 Specify the device to be exported by the virtual disk server as a virtual disk to the guest domain.

You can export a physical disk, disk slice, volumes, or file as a block device. The following examples show a physical disk and a file.

- **Physical Disk Example.** The first example adds a physical disk with these specifics.

```
primary# ldm add-vdsdev /dev/dsk/c2t1d0s2 vol1@primary-vds0
```

Where:

- `/dev/dsk/c2t1d0s2` is the path name of the actual physical device. When adding a device, the path name must be paired with the device name.
- `vol1` is a unique name you must specify for the device being added to the virtual disk server. The volume name must be unique to this virtual disk server instance, because this name is exported by this virtual disk server to the clients for adding. When adding a device, the volume name must be paired with the path name of the actual device.
- `primary-vds0` is the name of the virtual disk server to which to add this device.
- **File Example.** This second example is exporting a file as a block device.

```
primary# ldm add-vdsdev backend vol1@primary-vds0
```

Where:

- *backend* is the path name of the actual file exported as a block device. When adding a device, the backend must be paired with the device name.
- *vol1* is a unique name you must specify for the device being added to the virtual disk server. The volume name must be unique to this virtual disk server instance, because this name is exported by this virtual disk server to the clients for adding. When adding a device, the volume name must be paired with the path name of the actual device.
- *primary-vds0* is the name of the virtual disk server to which to add this device.

6 Add a virtual disk to the guest domain.

The following example adds a virtual disk to the guest domain `ldg1`.

```
primary# ldm add-vdisk vdisk1 vol1@primary-vds0 ldg1
```

Where:

- *vdisk1* is the name of the virtual disk.
- *vol1* is the name of the existing volume to which to connect.
- *primary-vds0* is the name of the existing virtual disk server to which to connect.

Note – The virtual disks are generic block devices that are backed by different types of physical devices, volumes, or files. A virtual disk is not synonymous with a SCSI disk and, therefore, excludes the target ID in the disk label. Virtual disks in a logical domain have the following format: *cNdNsN*, where *cN* is the virtual controller, *dN* is the virtual disk number, and *sN* is the slice.

7 Set auto-boot and boot-device variables for the guest domain.

The first example command sets `auto-boot\?` to `true` for guest domain `ldg1`.

```
primary# ldm set-var auto-boot\?=true ldg1
```

The second example command sets `boot-device` to `vdisk` for the guest domain `ldg1`.

```
primary# ldm set-var boot-device=vdisk ldg1
```

8 Bind resources to the guest domain `ldg1` and then list the domain to verify that it is bound.

```
primary# ldm bind-domain ldg1
```

```
primary# ldm list-domain ldg1
```

NAME	STATE	FLAGS	CONS	VCPU	MEMORY	UTIL	UPTIME
ldg1	bound	-----	5000	4	2G		

- 9 To find the console port of the guest domain, you can look at the output of the preceding `list-domain` subcommand.
You can see under the heading `Cons` that logical domain `guest 1 (ldg1)` has its console output bound to port `5000`.
- 10 Connect to the console of a guest domain from another terminal by logging into the control domain and connecting directly to the console port on the local host.

```
$ ssh admin@control.dom.domain
$ telnet localhost 5000
```
- 11 Start the guest domain `ldg1`.

```
primary# ldm start-domain ldg1
```

Installing Solaris OS on a Guest Domain

This section provides instructions for several different ways you can install the Solaris OS on a guest domain.

▼ Install Solaris OS on a Guest Domain From a DVD

- 1 Insert the Solaris 10 OS DVD into the DVD drive.
- 2 Stop the volume management daemon, `vol(1M)` on the primary domain.

```
primary# svcadm disable volfs
```
- 3 Stop and unbind the guest domain (`ldg1`). Then add the DVD with DVDROM media as a secondary volume (`dvd_vol@primary-vds0`) and virtual disk (`vdisk_cd_media`), for example. `c0t0d0s2` is where the Solaris OS media resides

```
primary# ldm stop ldg1
primary# ldm unbind ldg1
primary# ldm add-vdsdev /dev/dsk/c0t0d0s2 dvd_vol@primary-vds0
primary# ldm add-vdisk vdisk_cd_media dvd_vol@primary-vds0 ldg1
```

- 4 Check to see that the DVD is added as a secondary volume and virtual disk.

```
primary# ldm list-bindings
```

NAME	STATE	FLAGS	CONS	VCPU	MEMORY	UTIL	UPTIME
primary	active	-n-cv	SP	4	4G	0.2%	22h 45m
...							
VDS							
NAME	VOLUME	OPTIONS	DEVICE				
primary-vds0	vol1		/dev/dsk/c2t1d0s2				

```

    dvd_vol                                     /dev/dsk/c0t0d0s2
    ....
-----
NAME          STATE   FLAGS  CONS  VCPU  MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
ldg1          inactive -----  60    6G
...
DISK
NAME          VOLUME                                TOUT DEVICE  SERVER
vdisk1        vol1@primary-vds0
vdisk_cd_media dvd_vol@primary-vds0
    ....

```

5 Bind and start the guest domain (ldg1).

```

primary# ldm bind ldg1
primary# ldm start ldg1
LDom ldg1 started
primary# telnet localhost 5000
Trying 127.0.0.1...
Connected to localhost.
Escape character is '^]'.

Connecting to console "ldg1" in group "ldg1" ....
Press ~? for control options ..

```

6 Show the device aliases in the client OpenBoot™ PROM.

In this example, see the device aliases for `vdisk_cd_media`, which is the Solaris DVD, and `vdisk1`, which is a virtual disk on which you can install the Solaris OS.

```

ok devalias
vdisk_cd_media /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@1
vdisk1        /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@0
vnet1        /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/network@0
virtual-console /virtual-devices/console@1
name         aliases

```

7 On the guest domain's console, boot from `vdisk_cd_media` (disk@1) on slice `f`.

```

ok boot vdisk_cd_media:f -v
Boot device: /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@1:f  File and args: -s
SunOS Release 5.10 Version Generic_139555-08 64-bit
Copyright 1983-2009 Sun Microsystems, Inc.  All rights reserved.
Use is subject to license terms.

```

8 Continue with the Solaris OS installation menu.

▼ Install Solaris OS on a Guest Domain From a Solaris ISO File

1 Unbind the guest domain.

The following shows ldg1 as the guest domain:

```
primary# ldm unbind ldg1
```

2 Add the Solaris ISO file as a secondary volume and virtual disk.

The following uses solarisdvd.iso as the Solaris ISO file, iso_vol@primary-vds0 as a secondary volume, and vdisk_iso as a virtual disk:

```
primary# ldm add-vdsdev /export/solarisdvd.iso iso_vol@primary-vds0
primary# ldm-vdisk vdisk vdisk_iso iso_vol@primary-vds0 ldg1
```

3 Check to see that the Solaris ISO file is added as a secondary volume and virtual disk.

```
primary# ldm list-bindings
```

NAME	STATE	FLAGS	CONS	VCPU	MEMORY	UTIL	UPTIME
primary	active	-n-cv	SP	4	4G	0.2%	22h 45m

...

VDS

NAME	VOLUME	OPTIONS	DEVICE
primary-vds0	vol1		/dev/dsk/c2t1d0s2
iso_vol			/export/solarisdvd.iso

....

```
-----
NAME          STATE  FLAGS  CONS  VCPU  MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
ldg1          inactive -----  60    6G
```

...

DISK

NAME	VOLUME	TOUT	DEVICE	SERVER
vdisk1	vol1@primary-vds0			
vdisk_iso	iso_vol@primary-vds0			

....

4 Bind and start the guest domain (ldg1).

```
primary# ldm bind ldg1
primary# ldm start ldg1
LDom ldg1 started
primary# telnet localhost 5000
Trying 127.0.0.1...
Connected to localhost.
Escape character is '^]'.
```

Connecting to console "ldg1" in group "ldg1"

Press ~? for control options ..

5 Show the device aliases in the client OpenBoot PROM.

In this example, see the device aliases for `vdisk_iso`, which is the Solaris ISO image, and `vdisk_install`, which is the disk space.

```
ok devalias
vdisk_iso      /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@1
vdisk1        /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@0
vnet1         /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/network@0
virtual-console /virtual-devices/console@1
name          aliases
```

6 On the guest domain's console, boot from `vdisk_iso` (disk@1) on slice `f`.

```
ok boot vdisk_iso:f -v
Boot device: /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@1:f File and args: -s
SunOS Release 5.10 Version Generic_139555-08 64-bit
Copyright 1983-2009 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Use is subject to license terms.
```

7 Continue with the Solaris OS installation menu.

▼ Jump-Start a Guest Domain

- To jump-start a guest domain, use a normal JumpStart procedure with the following profile syntax changes from a regular Solaris OS JumpStart procedure to a JumpStart procedure specific to Logical Domains as shown in the following two examples.

Normal JumpStart Profile

```
filesystems c1t1d0s0 free /
filesystems c1t1d0s1 2048 swap
filesystems c1t1d0s5 120 /spare1
filesystems c1t1d0s6 120 /spare2
```

Virtual disk device names in a logical domain differ from physical disk device names in that they do not contain a target ID (`tN`) in the device name. Instead of the normal `cNtNdNsN` format, virtual disk device names are of the format `cNdNsN`, where `cN` is the virtual controller, `dN` is the virtual disk number, and `sN` is the slice. Modify your JumpStart profile to reflect this change as in the following profile example.

Actual Profile Used for a Logical Domain

```
filesystems c0d0s0 free /
filesystems c0d0s1 2048 swap
filesystems c0d0s5 120 /spare1
filesystems c0d0s6 120 /spare2
```

Note – You must use the MAC address of the virtual network (vnet) device as reported by the `ldm(1M)` command for your jumpstart configuration and not the one reported in the banner for the guest.

Saving Logical Domain Configurations for Future Rebuilding

The basic process is to save the constraints information for each domain into an XML file, which can then be re-issued to the Logical Domains Manager, for example, after a hardware failure to rebuild a desired configuration.

“[Rebuild Guest Domain Configurations](#)” on page 72 works for guest domains, not the control domain. You can save the control (primary) domain's constraints to an XML file, but you cannot feed it back into the `ldm add-domain -i` command. However, you can use the resource constraints from the XML file to create the CLI commands to reconfigure your primary domain. See “[Rebuilding the Control Domain](#)” on page 73 for instructions on how to translate typical XML output from an `ldm list-constraints -x primary` command into the CLI commands needed to reconfigure a primary domain.

The method that follows does not preserve actual bindings, only the constraints used to create those bindings. This means that, after this procedure, the domains will have the same virtual resources, but will not necessarily be bound to the same physical resources.

▼ Save All Logical Domain Configurations

- For each logical domain, create an XML file containing the domain's constraints.

```
# ldm list-constraints -x ldom > ldom.xml
```

The following example shows how to create an XML file, `primary.xml`, that contains the primary domain's constraints:

```
# ldm list-constraints -x primary > primary.xml
```

▼ Rebuild Guest Domain Configurations

- Run the following commands for each guest domain's XML file you created.

```
# ldm add-domain -i ldom.xml  
# ldm bind-domain ldom  
# ldm start-domain ldom
```

Rebuilding the Control Domain

This section provides instructions for how to translate typical XML output from an `ldm list-constraints -x primary` command into the CLI commands needed to reconfigure a primary domain. The resources and properties that you use to translate XML into CLI commands are shown in **bold** type in the sample XML output. Refer to the `ldm(1M)` man page for complete information about the CLI commands.

A sample output from a `ldm list-constraints -x primary` command follows.

EXAMPLE 4-1 Sample XML Output From `list-constraints` Subcommand

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<LDM_interface version="1.2" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="./schemas/combined-v3.xsd"
  xmlns:ovf="./schemas/envelope"
  xmlns:rasd="./schemas/CIM_ResourceAllocationSettingData"
  xmlns:vssd="./schemas/CIM_VirtualSystemSettingData"
  xmlns:gprop="./schemas/GenericProperty" xmlns:bind="./schemas/Binding">
<data version="3.0">
  <Envelope>
    <References/>
    <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" ovf:id="primary">
      <Section xsi:type="ovf:ResourceAllocationSection_Type">
        <Item>
          <rasd:OtherResourceType>ldom_info</rasd:OtherResourceType>
          <rasd:Address>00:03:ba:d8:ba:f6</rasd:Address>
          <gprop:GenericProperty key="hostid">0x83d8baf6</gprop:GenericProperty>
        </Item>
      </Section>
      <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
        <Item>
          <rasd:OtherResourceType>cpu</rasd:OtherResourceType>
          <rasd:AllocationUnits>4</rasd:AllocationUnits>
        </Item>
      </Section>
      <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
        <Item>
          <rasd:OtherResourceType>mau</rasd:OtherResourceType>
          <rasd:AllocationUnits>1</rasd:AllocationUnits>
        </Item>
      </Section>
      <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
        <Item>
          <rasd:OtherResourceType>memory</rasd:OtherResourceType>
          <rasd:AllocationUnits>4G</rasd:AllocationUnits>
        </Item>
      </Section>
    </Content>
  </Envelope>
</data>
</LDM_interface>
```

EXAMPLE 4-1 Sample XML Output From list-constraints Subcommand (Continued)

```

<Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
  <Item>
    <rasd:OtherResourceType>physio_device</rasd:OtherResourceType>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="name">pci@7c0</gprop:GenericProperty>
  </Item>
</Section>
<Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
  <Item>
    <rasd:OtherResourceType>vsw</rasd:OtherResourceType>
    <rasd:Address>auto-allocated</rasd:Address>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="service_name">primary-vsw0</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="dev_path">e1000g0</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="default-vlan-id">1</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="pvid">1</gprop:GenericProperty>
  </Item>
</Section>
<Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
  <Item>
    <rasd:OtherResourceType>vcc</rasd:OtherResourceType>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="service_name">primary-vcc0</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="min_port">5000</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="max_port">6000</gprop:GenericProperty>
  </Item>
</Section>
<Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
  <Item>
    <rasd:OtherResourceType>vds</rasd:OtherResourceType>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="service_name">primary-vds0</gprop:GenericProperty>
  </Item>
</Section>
<Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
  <Item>
    <rasd:OtherResourceType>vds_volume</rasd:OtherResourceType>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="vol_name">primary-vds0-vol0</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty
      key="block_dev">/opt/SUNWldm/domain_disks/testdisk.nv.53.1</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="service_name">primary-vds0</gprop:GenericProperty>
  </Item>
</Section>
</Content>
</Envelope>
</data>
</LDM_interface>

```

The <Content> tag and the <Section>s inside the <Content> tag describe the primary domain and all the resources contained in the primary domain. The <rasd: . . . > and

<gprop:GenericProperty . . .> tags within <Item>s describe the properties needed for each resource. You can go through each resource in each <Section> and construct CLI commands based on the resource's constraints. The following sections identify some of the more common resources in the domain XML description and the equivalent CLI command for that resource.

Logical Domain Information (ldom_info) Section

This section describes the primary domain's MAC address and host ID information. Because this is the primary domain, you cannot set this information; it is automatically set.

EXAMPLE 4-2 Logical Domains Information (ldom_info) Section

```
<Section> xsi:type="ovf:ResourceAllocationSection_Type">
  <Item>
    <rasd:OtherResourceType>ldom_info</rasd:OtherResourceType>
    <rasd:Address>00:03:ba:d8:ba:f6</rasd:Address>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="hostid">0x83d8baf6</gprop:GenericProperty>
  </Item>
</Section>
```

In this example, the logical domain information (ldom_info) is as follows:

- (MAC) Address - 00:03:ba:d8:ba:f6
- hostid - 0x83d8baf6

Cryptographic (mau) Section

This section describes the number of cryptographic units (maus) allocated to the primary domain.

Note – Even though the mau section comes after the cpu section in the XML listing, you must run the set - mau subcommand before the set - cpu subcommand, because you cannot remove CPUs from a domain without also removing their corresponding cryptographic units.

EXAMPLE 4-3 Cryptographic (mau) Section

```
<Section> xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type"
  <Item>
    <rasd:OtherResourceType>mau</rasd:OtherResourceType>
    <rasd:AllocationUnits>1</rasd:AllocationUnits>
  </Item>
</Section>
```

This section is equivalent to the following CLI command:

```
# ldm set-mau 1 primary
```

CPU (cpu) Section

This section describes the number of virtual cpus allocated to the primary domain.

EXAMPLE 4-4 CPU (cpu) Section

```
<Section> xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type"  
  <Item>  
    <rasd:OtherResourceType>cpu</rasd:OtherResourceType>  
    <rasd:AllocationUnits>4</rasd:AllocationUnits>  
  </Item>  
</Section>
```

This section is equivalent to the following CLI command:

```
# ldm set-vcpu 4 primary
```

Memory (memory) Section

This section describes the amount of memory allocated to the primary domain.

EXAMPLE 4-5 Memory (memory) Section

```
<Section> xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type"  
  <Item>  
    <rasd:OtherResourceType>memory</rasd:OtherResourceType>  
    <rasd:AllocationUnits>4G</rasd:AllocationUnits>  
  </Item>  
</Section>
```

This section is equivalent to the following CLI command:

```
# ldm set-memory 4G primary
```

Physical Input/Output (physio_device) Section

This section describes the physical I/O buses that you want to remain in the primary domain.

EXAMPLE 4-6 Physical I/O (physio_device) Section

```
<Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type"
  <Item>
    <rasd:OtherResourceType>physio_device</rasd:OtherResourceType>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="name">pci@7c0</gprop:GenericProperty>
  </Item>
</Section>
```

To set your primary domain with the same I/O devices as previously configured, you first need to list the I/O devices that are configured on startup.

```
# ldm list -l primary
....
IO
  DEVICE          PSEUDONYM      OPTIONS
  pci@7c0         bus_b
  pci@780         bus_a
....
```

In [Example 4-6](#), the bus previously configured to remain in the primary domain was `pci@7c0`. If there are no other `physio-device` sections in the XML, the `pci@780` bus must be removed.

This section is equivalent to the following CLI command:

```
# ldm remove-io pci@780 primary
```

Virtual Switch (vsw) Section

This section describes any virtual switches (vsws) allocated to the primary domain.

```
<Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
  <Item>
    <rasd:OtherResourceType>vsw</rasd:OtherResourceType>
    <rasd:Address>auto-allocated</rasd:Address>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="service_name">primary-vsw0</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="dev_path">e1000g0</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="mode">sc</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="default-vlan-id">1</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="pvid">1</gprop:GenericProperty>
  </Item>
</Section>
```

Where:

- The `<rasd:Address>` tag describes the MAC address to be used for the virtual switch. If the value of this tag is auto-allocated, you do not need to supply a MAC address.
- The XML key property `service_name` is the name of the virtual switch; in this case, `primary-vsw0`.
- The XML key property `dev_path` is the path name for the actual network device; in this case `net-dev=e1000g`.
- The XML key property `mode` indicates `sc` for SunCluster heartbeat support.

Some of the values in this section are default values, such as the `default-vlan-id (1)` and `pvid (1)`, so the section is equivalent to the following CLI command:

```
# ldm add-vswitch net-dev=e1000g primary-vsw0 primary
```

Virtual Console Concentrator (vcc) Section

This section describes any virtual console concentrator (vcc) allocated to the primary domain.

```
<Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
  <Item>
    <rasd:OtherResourceType>vcc</rasd:OtherResourceType>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="service_name">primary-vcc0</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="min_port">5000</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="max_port">6000</gprop:GenericProperty>
  </Item>
</Section>
```

Where the XML key property `service_name` is the name of the vcc service; in this case, `primary-vcc0`.

This section is the equivalent of the following CLI command:

```
# ldm add-vcc port-range=5000-6000 primary-vcc0 primary
```

Virtual Disk Server (vds) Section

This section describes any virtual disk server (vds) allocated to the primary domain.

```
<Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
  <Item>
    <rasd:OtherResourceType>vds</rasd:OtherResourceType>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="service_name">primary-vds0</gprop:GenericProperty>
  </Item>
</Section>
```

Where the XML key property `service_name` is the service name for this instance of the virtual disk server; in this case, `primary-vds0`. The `service_name` must be unique among all virtual disk server instances on the server.

This section is the equivalent of the following CLI command:

```
# ldm add-vds primary-vds0 primary
```

Virtual Disk Server Device (vdsdev) Section

This section describes any device (`vdsdev`) exported by the virtual disk server that is allocated to the primary domain.

```
<Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
  <Item>
    <rasd:OtherResourceType>vds_volume</rasd:OtherResourceType>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="vol_name">vdsdev0</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="service_name">primary-vds0</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty
      key="block_dev">/opt/SUNWldm/domain_disks/testdisk1</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="vol_opts">ro</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty key="mpgroup">mpgroup-name</gprop:GenericProperty>
  </Item>
</Section>
```

Where:

- The XML key properties volume name (`vol_name`) and service name (`service_name`) are paired in the CLI command; in this case, `vdsdev0@primary-vds0`.
- The XML key property `block_dev` is the *backend* argument in the equivalent CLI command, which is the location where data of a virtual disk are stored; in this case, `/opt/SUNWldm/domain_disks/testdisk1`.
- The optional XML key property `vol_opts` is one or more of the following, comma-separated, within one string: `{ro, slice, excl}`.
- The optional XML key property `mpgroup` is the name of the multipath (failover) group.

This section is equivalent to the following CLI command:

```
# ldm add-vdsdev options=ro mpgroup=mpgroup-name
/opt/SUNWldm/domain_disks/testdisk1 vdsdev0@primary-vds0
```

Configuring Domain Dependencies

You can use the Logical Domains Manager to establish dependency relationships between domains. A domain that has one or more domains that depend on it is called a *master domain*. A domain that depends on another domain is called a *slave domain*.

Each slave domain can specify up to four master domains by setting the `master` property. For example, the `pine` slave domain specifies its four master domains in the following comma-separated list:

```
# ldm add-domain master=apple,lemon,orange,peach pine
```

Each master domain can specify what happens to its slave domains in the event that the master domain fails. For instance, if a master domain fails, it might require its slave domains to panic. If a slave domain has more than one master domain, the first master domain to fail triggers its defined failure policy on all of its slave domains.

Note – If more than one master domain fails simultaneously, only one of the specified failure policies will be enforced on all the affected slave domains. For example, if the failed master domains have failure policies of `stop` and `panic`, all slave domains will be either stopped or panicked.

The master domain's failure policy is controlled by setting one of the following values to the `failure-policy` property:

- `ignore` ignores any slave domains when the master domain fails.
- `panic` panics any slave domains when the master domain fails.
- `reset` resets any slave domains when the master domain fails.
- `stop` stops any slave domains when the master domain fails.

In this example, the master domains specify their failure policy as follows:

```
# ldm set-domain failure-policy=ignore apple
# ldm set-domain failure-policy=panic lemon
# ldm set-domain failure-policy=reset orange
# ldm set-domain failure-policy=stop peach
```

You can use this mechanism to create explicit dependencies between domains. For example, a guest domain implicitly depends on the service domain to provide its virtual devices. A guest domain's I/O is blocked when the service domain on which it depends is not up and running. By defining a guest domain as a slave of its service domain, you can specify the behavior of the guest domain when its service domain goes down. When no such dependency is established, a guest domain just waits for its service domain to return to service.

Note – The Logical Domains Manager does not permit you to create domain relationships that create a dependency cycle. For more information, see [“Dependency Cycles” on page 83](#).

For domain dependency XML examples, see [Example 10–6](#).

Domain Dependency Examples

The following examples show how to configure domain dependencies.

- The first command creates a master domain called `twizzle`. This command uses `failure-policy=reset` to specify that slave domains reset if the `twizzle` domain fails. The second command modifies a master domain called `primary`. This command uses `failure-policy=panic` to specify that slave domains panic if the `primary` domain fails. The third command creates a slave domain called `chocktaw` that depends on two master domains, `twizzle` and `primary`. The slave domain uses `master=twizzle,primary` to specify its master domains. In the event either the `twizzle` or `primary` domain fails, the `chocktaw` domain will reset or panic. The first master domain to fail is the one responsible for determining the behavior of the slave domains.

```
# ldm add-domain failure-policy=reset twizzle
# ldm set-domain failure-policy=panic primary
# ldm add-domain master=twizzle,primary chocktaw
```

- This example shows how to use the `ldm set-domain` command to modify the `orange` domain to assign `primary` as the master domain. The second command uses the `ldm set-domain` command to assign `orange` and `primary` as master domains for the `tangerine` domain. The third command lists information about all of these domains.

```
# ldm set-domain master=primary orange
# ldm set-domain master=orange,primary tangerine
# ldm list -o domain
```

NAME	STATE	FLAGS	UTIL
primary	active	-n-cv-	0.2%

```
SOFTSTATE
Solaris running
```

```
HOSTID
0x83d8b31c
```

```
CONTROL
failure-policy=ignore
```

```
DEPENDENCY
```

```

        master=
-----
NAME          STATE      FLAGS    UTIL
orange        bound     - - - - -
HOSTID
    0x84fb28ef
CONTROL
    failure-policy=stop
DEPENDENCY
    master=primary
VARIABLES
    test_var=Aloha
-----
NAME          STATE      FLAGS    UTIL
tangerine     bound     - - - - -
HOSTID
    0x84f948e9
CONTROL
    failure-policy=ignore
DEPENDENCY
    master=orange,primary
VARIABLES
    test_var=A hui hou

```

- The following shows an example listing with parseable output:

```

# ldm list -o domain -p
VERSION 1.4
DOMAIN|name=primary|state=active|flags=normal,control,vio-service|util=0.3
    softstate=Solaris running
HOSTID|hostid=0x83d8b31c
CONTROL|failure-policy=ignore
DEPENDENCY|master=
DOMAIN|name=orange|state=bound|flags=|util=
HOSTID|hostid=0x84fb28ef
CONTROL|failure-policy=stop
DEPENDENCY|master=primary
VARIABLES|test_var=Aloha
DOMAIN|name=tangerine|state=bound|flags=|util=

```

```
HOSTID|hostid=0x84f948e9
CONTROL|failure-policy=ignore
DEPENDENCY|master=orange,primary
VARIABLES|test_var=A hui hou
```

Dependency Cycles

The Logical Domains Manager does not permit you to create domain relationships that create a dependency cycle. A *dependency cycle* is a relationship between two or more domains that lead to a situation where a slave domain depends on itself, or a master domain depends on one of its slave domains.

The Logical Domains Manager determines whether a dependency cycle exists before adding a dependency. The Logical Domains Manager starts at the slave domain and searches along all paths that are specified by the master array until the end of the path is reached. Any dependency cycles found along the way are reported as errors.

The following example shows how a dependency cycle might be created. The first command creates a slave domain called `mohawk` that specifies its master domain as `primary`. So, `mohawk` depends on `primary` in the following dependency chain:



FIGURE 4-1 Single Domain Dependency

The second command creates a slave domain called `primary` that specifies its master domain as `counter`. So, `mohawk` depends on `primary`, which depends on `counter` in the following dependency chain:

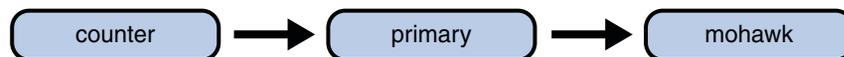


FIGURE 4-2 Multiple Domain Dependency

The third command attempts to create a dependency between the `counter` and `mohawk` domains, which would produce the following dependency cycle:

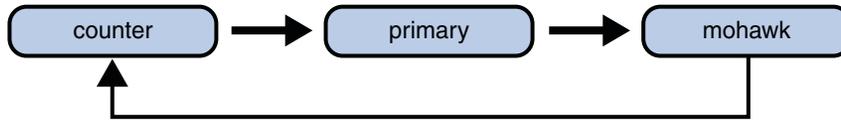


FIGURE 4-3 Domain Dependency Cycle

The `ldm set-domain` command will fail with the following error message:

```
# ldm add-domain master=primary mohawk
# ldm set-domain master=counter primary
# ldm set-domain master=mohawk counter
Dependency cycle detected: LDom "counter" indicates "primary" as its master
```

Setting Up I/O Domains

This chapter describes how to set up additional I/O domains in a Logical Domains environment.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- “I/O Domains and PCI EXPRESS Buses” on page 85
- “Enabling the I/O MMU Bypass Mode on a PCI Bus” on page 89

I/O Domains and PCI EXPRESS Buses

An I/O domain is a domain that has direct ownership of and direct access to physical I/O devices. It can be created by assigning a PCI EXPRESS (PCI-E) bus to a domain. PCI-E buses that are present on a server are identified with names such as `pci@780 (bus_a)` or `pci@400 (pci_0)`. Use the `ldm` command to assign each bus to a separate domain.

The maximum number of I/O domains that you can create depends on the number of PCI-E buses available on the server. A Sun UltraSPARC T1 based server has up to two PCI-E buses, so it can have up to two I/O domains. A Sun UltraSPARC T2 Plus based server has up to four PCI-E buses, so it can have up to four I/O domains.

Note – Sun UltraSPARC T2 based servers, such as the Sun SPARC Enterprise T5120 and T5220 servers, only have one PCI-E bus. So, such servers cannot configure more than one domain with direct access to physical devices. However, you can assign a Network Interface Unit (NIU) to a domain rather than configuring a new I/O domain. See “Using NIU Hybrid I/O” on page 138.

When a server is initially configured with Logical Domains or is using the factory-default configuration, the control domain has access to all the physical device resources. This means that the control (primary) domain is the only I/O domain configured on the system and that it owns all the PCI-E buses.

▼ Create a New I/O Domain

This example procedure shows how to create a new I/O domain from an initial configuration where several buses are owned by the primary domain. By default the primary domain owns all buses present on the system. This example is for a Sun Fire T2000 server. This procedure can also be used on other servers. The instructions for different servers might vary slightly from these, but you can obtain the basic principles from this example.

First, you must retain the bus that has the primary domain's boot disk. Then, remove another bus from the primary domain and assign it to another domain.



Caution – All internal disks on the supported servers are connected to a single PCI bus. If a domain is booted from an internal disk, do not remove that bus from the domain. Also, ensure that you are not removing a bus with devices (such as network ports) that are used by a domain. If you remove the wrong bus, a domain might not be able to access the required devices and could become unusable. To remove a bus that has devices that are used by a domain, reconfigure that domain to use devices from other buses. For example, you might have to reconfigure the domain to use a different onboard network port or a PCI card from a different PCI slot.

In this example, the primary domain only uses a disk (c1t0d0) and network interface (e1000g2). If the primary domain uses more devices, repeat Steps 2-4 for each device to ensure that none are located on the bus that will be removed.

1 Verify that the primary domain owns several PCI buses.

```
primary# ldm list-bindings primary
...
IO
    DEVICE          PSEUDONYM      OPTIONS
    pci@780         bus_a
    pci@7c0         bus_b
...
```

2 Determine the device path of the boot disk, which needs to be retained.

```
primary# df /
/                (/dev/dsk/c1t0d0s0 ): 1309384 blocks  457028 files
```

3 Determine the physical device to which the block device is linked.

The following example uses block device c1t0d0s0:

```
primary# ls -l /dev/dsk/c1t0d0s0
lrwxrwxrwx  1 root    root          65 Feb  2 17:19 /dev/dsk/c1t0d0s0 -> ../
../devices/pci@7c0/pci@0/pci@1/pci@0,2/LSILogic,sas@2/sd@0,0:a
```

In this example, the physical device for the primary domain's boot disk is connected to bus `pci@7c0`, which corresponds to the earlier listing of `bus_b`. This means that you can assign `bus_a (pci@780)` to another domain.

4 Determine the network interface that is used by the system.

```
primary# dladm show-phys
LINK          MEDIA          STATE    SPEED  DUPLEX    DEVICE
e1000g0      Ethernet      unknown  0      half      e1000g0
e1000g1      Ethernet      unknown  0      half      e1000g1
e1000g2      Ethernet      up       100    full      e1000g2
e1000g3      Ethernet      unknown  0      half      e1000g3
```

Interfaces that are in the unknown state are not configured, so they are not used. In this example, only the `e1000g2` interface is used.

5 Determine the physical device to which the network interface is linked.

The following command uses the `e1000g2` network interface:

```
primary# ls -l /dev/e1000g2
lrwxrwxrwx  1 root  root          48 Sep 25  2008 /dev/e1000g2
-> ../devices/pci@7c0/pci@0/pci@2/network@0:e1000g2
```

In this example, the physical device for the network interface used by the primary domain is under bus `pci@7c0`, which corresponds to the earlier listing of `bus_a`. This means that the boot disk and the network interface of the primary domain are on the same bus, `bus_b (pci@7c0)`. So, `bus_a (pci@780)` can safely be assigned to another domain because it is not used by the primary domain.

If the network interface used by the primary domain was on a bus that you want to assign to another domain, the primary domain would need to be reconfigured to use a different network interface.

6 Remove the bus that does not contain the boot disk from a domain.

In this example, bus `pci@780` is being removed from the primary domain.

```
primary# ldm remove-io pci@780 primary
```

7 Save this configuration to the service processor.

In this example, the configuration is `io-domain`.

```
primary# ldm add-config io-domain
```

This configuration, `io-domain`, is also set as the next configuration to be used after the reboot.

Note – Currently, there is a limit of 8 configurations that can be saved on the SP, not including the `factory-default` configuration.

8 Reboot the primary domain so that the change takes effect.

```
primary# shutdown -i6 -g0 -y
```

9 Stop the domain to which you want to add the PCI bus.

The following example stops the ldg1 domain:

```
primary# ldm stop ldg1
primary# ldm unbind ldg1
```

10 Add the available bus to the domain that needs direct access.

The available bus is pci@780 and the domain is ldg1.

```
primary# ldm add-io pci@780 ldg1
```

If you have an Infiniband card, you might need to enable the bypass mode on the pci@780 bus. See [“Enabling the I/O MMU Bypass Mode on a PCI Bus” on page 89](#) for information on whether you need to enable the bypass mode.

11 Restart the domain so that the change takes affect.

The following commands restart the ldg1 domain:

```
primary# ldm bind ldg1
primary# ldm start ldg1
```

12 Confirm that the correct bus is still assigned to the primary domain and the correct bus is assigned to domain ldg1.

```
primary# ldm list-bindings primary ldg1
```

NAME	STATE	FLAGS	CONS	VCPU	MEMORY	UTIL	UPTIME
primary	active	-n-cv	SP	4	4G	0.4%	18h 25m
...							
IO							
	DEVICE		PSEUDONYM		OPTIONS		
	pci@7c0		bus_b				
...							

NAME	STATE	FLAGS	CONS	VCPU	MEMORY	UTIL	UPTIME
ldg1	active	-n---	5000	4	2G	10%	35m
...							
IO							
	DEVICE		PSEUDONYM		OPTIONS		
	pci@780		bus_a				
...							

This output confirms that the PCI-E bus bus_b and the devices below it are assigned to domain primary, and bus_a and its devices are assigned to ldg1.

Enabling the I/O MMU Bypass Mode on a PCI Bus

If you have an Infiniband Host Channel Adapter (HCA) card, you might need to turn the I/O memory management unit (MMU) bypass mode on. By default, Logical Domains software controls PCI-E transactions so that a given I/O device or PCI-E option can only access the physical memory assigned within the I/O domain. Any attempt to access memory of another guest domain is prevented by the I/O MMU. This provides a higher level of security between the I/O domain and all other domains. However, in the rare case where a PCI-E or PCI-X option card does not load or operate with the I/O MMU bypass mode off, this option allows you to turn the I/O MMU bypass mode on. However, if you turn the bypass mode on, there no longer is a hardware-enforced protection of memory accesses from the I/O domain.

The `bypass=on` option turns on the I/O MMU bypass mode. This bypass mode should be enabled only if the respective I/O domain and I/O devices within that I/O domain are trusted by all guest domains. This example turns on the bypass mode.

```
primary# ldm add-io bypass=on pci@780 ldg1
```

The output shows `bypass=on` under `OPTIONS`.

Using Virtual Disks

This chapter describes how to use virtual disks with Logical Domains software.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- “Introduction to Virtual Disks” on page 91
- “Managing Virtual Disks” on page 92
- “Virtual Disk Identifier and Device Name” on page 94
- “Virtual Disk Appearance” on page 95
- “Virtual Disk Backend Options” on page 96
- “Virtual Disk Backend” on page 98
- “Configuring Virtual Disk Multipathing” on page 103
- “CD, DVD and ISO Images” on page 105
- “Virtual Disk Timeout” on page 109
- “Virtual Disk and SCSI” on page 109
- “Virtual Disk and the `format(1M)` Command” on page 110
- “Using ZFS With Virtual Disks” on page 110
- “Using Volume Managers in a Logical Domains Environment” on page 114

Introduction to Virtual Disks

A virtual disk contains two components: the virtual disk itself as it appears in a guest domain, and the virtual disk backend, which is where data is stored and where virtual I/O ends up. The virtual disk backend is exported from a service domain by the virtual disk server (`vds`) driver. The `vds` driver communicates with the virtual disk client (`vdc`) driver in the guest domain through the hypervisor using a logical domain channel (LDC). Finally, a virtual disk appears as `/dev/[r]dsk/cXdYsZ` devices in the guest domain.

The virtual disk backend can be physical or logical. Physical devices can include the following:

- Physical disk or disk logical unit number (LUN)
- Physical disk slice

Logical devices can be any of the following:

- File on a file system, such as ZFS or UFS
- Logical volume from a volume manager, such as ZFS, VxVM, or Solaris™ Volume Manager (SVM)
- Any disk pseudo device accessible from the service domain

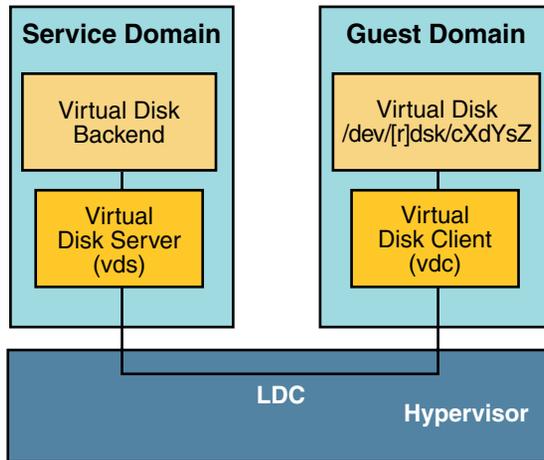


FIGURE 6-1 Virtual Disks With Logical Domains

Managing Virtual Disks

This section describes adding a virtual disk to a guest domain, changing virtual disk and timeout options, and removing a virtual disk from a guest domain. See [“Virtual Disk Backend Options” on page 96](#) for a description of virtual disk options. See [“Virtual Disk Timeout” on page 109](#) for a description of the virtual disk timeout.

▼ Add a Virtual Disk

- 1 Export the virtual disk backend from a service domain.

```
# ldm add-vdsdev [options={ro,slice,excl}] [mpgroup=mpgroup] \  
backend volume-name@service-name
```

- 2 Assign the backend to a guest domain.

```
# ldm add-vdisk [timeout=seconds] [id=disk-id] disk-name volume-name@service-name ldom
```

You can specify an ID of a new virtual disk device by setting the `id` property. By default, ID values are automatically generated, so set this property if you need to match an existing device name in the OS. See “[Virtual Disk Identifier and Device Name](#)” on page 94.

Note – A backend is actually exported from the service domain and assigned to the guest domain when the guest domain (*ldom*) is bound.

▼ Export a Virtual Disk Backend Multiple Times

A virtual disk backend can be exported multiple times either through the same or different virtual disk servers. Each exported instance of the virtual disk backend can then be assigned to either the same or different guest domains.

When a virtual disk backend is exported multiple times, it should not be exported with the exclusive (`excl`) option. Specifying the `excl` option will only allow exporting the backend once. The backend can be safely exported multiple times as a read-only device with the `ro` option.



Caution – When a virtual disk backend is exported multiple times, applications running on guest domains and using that virtual disk are responsible for coordinating and synchronizing concurrent write access to ensure data coherency.

The following example describes how to add the same virtual disk to two different guest domains through the same virtual disk service.

1 Export the virtual disk backend two times from a service domain by using the following commands.

```
# ldm add-vdsdev [options={ro,slice}] backend volume1@service-name
# ldm add-vdsdev -f [options={ro,slice}] backend volume2@service-name
```

Note that the second `ldm add-vdsdev` command uses the `-f` option to force the second export of the backend. Use this option when using the same backend path for both commands and when the virtual disk servers are located on the same service domain.

2 Assign the exported backend to each guest domain by using the following commands.

The *disk-name* can be different for `ldom1` and `ldom2`.

```
# ldm add-vdisk [timeout=seconds] disk-name volume1@service-name ldom1
# ldm add-vdisk [timeout=seconds] disk-name volume2@service-name ldom2
```

▼ Change Virtual Disk Options

- After a backend is exported from the service domain, you can change the virtual disk options by using the following command.

```
# ldm set-vdsdev options=[{ro,slice,excl}] volume-name@service-name
```

▼ Change the Timeout Option

- After a virtual disk is assigned to a guest domain, you can change the timeout of the virtual disk by using the following command.

```
# ldm set-vdisk timeout=seconds disk-name ldom
```

▼ Remove a Virtual Disk

- 1 Remove a virtual disk from a guest domain by using the following command.

```
# ldm rm-vdisk disk-name ldom
```

- 2 Stop exporting the corresponding backend from the service domain by using the following command.

```
# ldm rm-vdsdev volume-name@service-name
```

Virtual Disk Identifier and Device Name

When you use the `ldm add-vdisk` command to add a virtual disk to a domain, you can specify its device number by setting the `id` property.

```
# ldm add-vdisk [id=disk-id] disk-name volume-name@service-name ldom
```

Each virtual disk of a domain has a unique device number that is assigned when the domain is bound. If a virtual disk is added with an explicit device number (by setting the `id` property), the specified device number is used. Otherwise, the system automatically assigns the lowest device number available. In that case, the device number assigned depends on how virtual disks were added to the domain. The device number eventually assigned to a virtual disk is visible in the output of the `ldm list-bindings` command when a domain is bound.

When a domain with virtual disks is running the Solaris OS, each virtual disk appears in the domain as a `c0dn` disk device, where `n` is the device number of the virtual disk.

In the following example, the `ldg1` domain has two virtual disks: `rootdisk` and `pdisk`. `rootdisk` has a device number of 0 (`disk@0`) and appears in the domain as the disk device `c0d0`. `pdisk` has a device number of 1 (`disk@1`) and appears in the domain as the disk device `c0d1`.

```
primary# ldm list-bindings ldg1
...
DISK
  NAME                VOLUME                                TOUT DEVICE  SERVER      MPGROUP
  rootdisk            dsk_nevada@primary-vds0              disk@0      primary
  pdisk               c3t40d1@primary-vds0                  disk@1      primary
...
```



Caution – If a device number is not explicitly assigned to a virtual disk, its device number can change when the domain is unbound and is later bound again. In that case, the device name assigned by the OS running in the domain can also change and break the existing configuration of the system. This might happen, for example, when a virtual disk is removed from the configuration of the domain.

Virtual Disk Appearance

When a backend is exported as a virtual disk, it can appear in the guest domain either as a full disk or as a single slice disk. The way it appears depends on the type of the backend and on the options used to export it.

Full Disk

When a backend is exported to a domain as a full disk, it appears in that domain as a regular disk with 8 slices (`s0` to `s7`). Such a disk is visible with the `format(1M)` command. The disk's partition table can be changed using either the `fmthard(1M)` or `format(1M)` command.

A full disk is also visible to the OS installation software and can be selected as a disk onto which the OS can be installed.

Any backend can be exported as a full disk except physical disk slices that can only be exported as single slice disks.

Single Slice Disk

When a backend is exported to a domain as a single slice disk, it appears in that domain as a regular disk with 8 slices (`s0` to `s7`). However, only the first slice (`s0`) is usable. Such a disk is visible with the `format(1M)` command, but the disk's partition table cannot be changed.

A single slice disk is also visible from the OS installation software and can be selected as a disk onto which you can install the OS. In that case, if you install the OS using the UNIX File System (UFS), then only the root partition (`/`) must be defined, and this partition must use all the disk space.

Any backend can be exported as a single slice disk except physical disks that can only be exported as full disks.

Note – Prior to the Solaris 10 10/08 OS release, a single slice disk appeared as a disk with a single partition (`s0`). Such a disk was not visible with the `format(1M)` command. The disk also was not visible from the OS installation software and could not be selected as a disk device onto which the OS could be installed.

Virtual Disk Backend Options

Different options can be specified when exporting a virtual disk backend. These options are indicated in the `options=` argument of the `ldm add -vdsdev` command as a comma separated list. The valid options are: `ro`, `slice`, and `excl`.

Read-only (`ro`) Option

The read-only (`ro`) option specifies that the backend is to be exported as a read-only device. In that case, the virtual disk assigned to the guest domain can only be accessed for read operations, and any write operation to the virtual disk will fail.

Exclusive (`excl`) Option

The exclusive (`excl`) option specifies that the backend in the service domain has to be opened exclusively by the virtual disk server when it is exported as a virtual disk to another domain. When a backend is opened exclusively, it is not accessible by other applications in the service domain. This prevents the applications running in the service domain from inadvertently using a backend that is also being used by a guest domain.

Note – Some drivers do not honor the `excl` option and will disallow some virtual disk backends from being opened exclusively. The `excl` option is known to work with physical disks and slices, but the option does not work with files. It may or may not work with pseudo devices, such as disk volumes. If the driver of the backend does not honor the exclusive open, the backend `excl` option is ignored, and the backend is not opened exclusively.

Because the `excl` option prevents applications running in the service domain from accessing a backend exported to a guest domain, do not set the `excl` option in the following situations:

- When guest domains are running, if you want to be able to use commands such as `format(1M)` or `luxadm(1M)` to manage physical disks, then do not export these disks with the `excl` option.
- When you export an SVM volume, such as a RAID or a mirrored volume, do not set the `excl` option. Otherwise, this can prevent SVM from starting some recovery operation in case a component of the RAID or mirrored volume fails. See [“Using Virtual Disks on Top of SVM” on page 115](#) for more information.
- If the Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) is installed in the service domain and Veritas Dynamic Multipathing (VxDMP) is enabled for physical disks, then physical disks have to be exported without the (non-default) `excl` option. Otherwise, the export fails, because the virtual disk server (`vds`) is unable to open the physical disk device. See [“Using Virtual Disks When VxVM Is Installed” on page 116](#) for more information.
- If you are exporting the same virtual disk backend multiple times from the same virtual disk service, see [“Export a Virtual Disk Backend Multiple Times” on page 93](#) for more information.

By default, the backend is opened non-exclusively. That way the backend still can be used by applications running in the service domain while it is exported to another domain. Note that this is a new behavior starting with the Solaris 10 5/08 OS release. Prior to the Solaris 10 5/08 OS release, disk backends were always opened exclusively, and it was not possible to have a backend opened non-exclusively.

Slice (`slice`) Option

A backend is normally exported either as a full disk or as a single slice disk depending on its type. If the `slice` option is specified, then the backend is forcibly exported as a single slice disk.

This option is useful when you want to export the raw content of a backend. For example, if you have a ZFS or SVM volume where you have already stored data and you want your guest domain to access this data, then you should export the ZFS or SVM volume using the `slice` option.

For more information about this option, see [“Virtual Disk Backend” on page 98](#).

Virtual Disk Backend

The virtual disk backend is the location where data of a virtual disk are stored. The backend can be a disk, a disk slice, a file, or a volume, such as ZFS, SVM, or VxVM. A backend appears in a guest domain either as a full disk or as single slice disk, depending on whether the `slice` option is set when the backend is exported from the service domain. By default, a virtual disk backend is exported non-exclusively as a readable-writable full disk.

Physical Disk or Disk LUN

A physical disk or disk LUN is always exported as a full disk. In that case, virtual disk drivers (`vds` and `vdc`) forward I/O from the virtual disk and act as a pass-through to the physical disk or disk LUN.

A physical disk or disk LUN is exported from a service domain by exporting the device that corresponds to the slice 2 (`s2`) of that disk without setting the `slice` option. If you export the slice 2 of a disk with the `slice` option, only this slice is exported and not the entire disk.

▼ Export a Physical Disk as a Virtual Disk

1 Export a physical disk as a virtual disk.

For example, to export the physical disk `c1t48d0` as a virtual disk, you must export slice 2 of that disk (`c1t48d0s2`).

```
primary# ldm add-vdsdev /dev/dsk/c1t48d0s2 c1t48d0@primary-vds0
```

2 Assign the disk to a guest domain.

For example, assign the disk (`pdisk`) to guest domain `ldg1`.

```
primary# ldm add-vdisk pdisk c1t48d0@primary-vds0 ldg1
```

3 After the guest domain is started and running the Solaris OS, verify that the disk is accessible and is a full disk.

A full disk is a regular disk that has eight (8) slices.

For example, the disk being checked is `c0d1`.

```
ldg1# ls -l /dev/dsk/c0d1s*
/dev/dsk/c0d1s0
/dev/dsk/c0d1s1
/dev/dsk/c0d1s2
/dev/dsk/c0d1s3
/dev/dsk/c0d1s4
/dev/dsk/c0d1s5
/dev/dsk/c0d1s6
/dev/dsk/c0d1s7
```

Physical Disk Slice

A physical disk slice is always exported as a single slice disk. In that case, virtual disk drivers (`vds` and `vdv`) forward I/O from the virtual disk and act as a pass-through to the physical disk slice.

A physical disk slice is exported from a service domain by exporting the corresponding slice device. If the device is different from slice 2 then it is automatically exported as a single slice disk whether or not you specify the `slice` option. If the device is the slice 2 of the disk, you must set the `slice` option to export only slice 2 as a single slice disk; otherwise, the entire disk is exported as full disk.

▼ Export a Physical Disk Slice as a Virtual Disk

1 Export a slice of a physical disk as a virtual disk.

For example, to export slice 0 of the physical disk `c1t57d0` as a virtual disk, you must export the device that corresponds to that slice (`c1t57d0s0`) as follows.

```
primary# ldm add-vdsdev /dev/dsk/c1t57d0s0 c1t57d0s0@primary-vds0
```

You do not need to specify the `slice` option, because a slice is always exported as a single slice disk.

2 Assign the disk to a guest domain.

For example, assign the disk (`pslice`) to guest domain `ldg1`.

```
primary# ldm add-vdisk pslice c1t57d0s0@primary-vds0 ldg1
```

3 After the guest domain is started and running the Solaris OS, you can list the disk (`c0d13`, for example) and see that the disk is accessible.

```
ldg1# ls -l /dev/dsk/c0d13s*
/dev/dsk/c0d13s0
/dev/dsk/c0d13s1
/dev/dsk/c0d13s2
/dev/dsk/c0d13s3
/dev/dsk/c0d13s4
/dev/dsk/c0d13s5
/dev/dsk/c0d13s6
/dev/dsk/c0d13s7
```

Although there are 8 devices, because the disk is a single slice disk, only the first slice (`s0`) is usable.

▼ Export Slice 2

- To export slice 2 (disk `c1t57d0s2`, for example) you must specify the `slice` option; otherwise, the entire disk is exported.

```
# ldm add-vdsdev options=slice /dev/dsk/c1t57d0s2 c1t57d0s2@primary-vds0
```

File and Volume

A file or volume (for example from ZFS or SVM) is exported either as a full disk or as single slice disk depending on whether or not the `slice` option is set.

File or Volume Exported as a Full Disk

If you do not set the `slice` option, a file or volume is exported as a full disk. In that case, virtual disk drivers (`vds` and `vdv`) forward I/O from the virtual disk and manage the partitioning of the virtual disk. The file or volume eventually becomes a disk image containing data from all slices of the virtual disk and the metadata used to manage the partitioning and disk structure.

When a blank file or volume is exported as full disk, it appears in the guest domain as an unformatted disk; that is, a disk with no partition. Then you need to run the `format(1M)` command in the guest domain to define usable partitions and to write a valid disk label. Any I/O to the virtual disk fails while the disk is unformatted.

Note – Prior to the Solaris 10 5/08 OS release, when a blank file was exported as a virtual disk, the system wrote a default disk label and created default partitioning. This is no longer the case with the Solaris 10 5/08 OS release, and you must run `format(1M)` in the guest domain to create partitions.

▼ Export a File as a Full Disk

- 1 From the service domain, create a file (`fdisk0` for example) to use as the virtual disk.

```
service# mkfile 100m /ldoms/domain/test/fdisk0
```

The size of the file defines the size of the virtual disk. This example creates a 100-megabyte blank file to get a 100-megabyte virtual disk.

- 2 From the control domain, export the file as a virtual disk.

```
primary# ldm add-vdsdev /ldoms/domain/test/fdisk0 fdisk0@primary-vds0
```

In this example, the `slice` option is not set, so the file is exported as a full disk.

3 From the control domain, assign the disk to a guest domain.

For example, assign the disk (`fdisk`) to guest domain `ldg1`.

```
primary# ldm add-vdisk fdisk fdisk0@primary-vds0 ldg1
```

4 After the guest domain is started and running the Solaris OS, verify that the disk is accessible and is a full disk.

A full disk is a regular disk with 8 slices.

The following example shows how to list the disk, `c0d5`, and verify that it is accessible and is a full disk.

```
ldg1# ls -l /dev/dsk/c0d5s*
/dev/dsk/c0d5s0
/dev/dsk/c0d5s1
/dev/dsk/c0d5s2
/dev/dsk/c0d5s3
/dev/dsk/c0d5s4
/dev/dsk/c0d5s5
/dev/dsk/c0d5s6
/dev/dsk/c0d5s7
```

File or Volume Exported as a Single Slice Disk

If the `slice` option is set, then the file or volume is exported as a single slice disk. In that case, the virtual disk has only one partition (`s0`), which is directly mapped to the file or volume backend. The file or volume only contains data written to the virtual disk with no extra data like partitioning information or disk structure.

When a file or volume is exported as a single slice disk, the system simulates a fake disk partitioning which makes that file or volume appear as a disk slice. Because the disk partitioning is simulated, you do not create partitioning for that disk.

▼ Export a ZFS Volume as a Single Slice Disk**1 Create a ZFS volume to use as a single slice disk.**

The following example shows how to create a ZFS volume, `zdisk0`, to use as a single slice disk.

```
service# zfs create -V 100m ldoms/domain/test/zdisk0
```

The size of the volume defines the size of the virtual disk. This example creates a 100-megabyte volume to get a 100-megabyte virtual disk.

2 From the control domain, export the corresponding device to that ZFS volume, and set the `slice` option so that the volume is exported as a single slice disk.

```
primary# ldm add-vdsdev options=slice /dev/zvol/dsk/ldoms/domain/test/zdisk0 \
zdisk0@primary-vds0
```

3 From the control domain, assign the volume to a guest domain.

The following shows how to assign the volume, `zdisk0`, to guest domain `ldg1`.

```
primary# ldm add-vdisk zdisk0 zdisk0@primary-vds0 ldg1
```

4 After the guest domain is started and running the Solaris OS, you can list the disk (`c0d9`, for example) and see that the disk is accessible and is a single slice disk (`s0`).

```
ldg1# ls -l /dev/dsk/c0d9s*
/dev/dsk/c0d9s0
/dev/dsk/c0d9s1
/dev/dsk/c0d9s2
/dev/dsk/c0d9s3
/dev/dsk/c0d9s4
/dev/dsk/c0d9s5
/dev/dsk/c0d9s6
/dev/dsk/c0d9s7
```

Exporting Volumes and Backward Compatibility

Prior to the Solaris 10 5/08 OS release, the `slice` option did not exist, and volumes were exported as single slice disks. If you have a configuration exporting volumes as virtual disks and if you upgrade the system to the Solaris 10 5/08 OS, volumes are now exported as full disks instead of single slice disks. To preserve the old behavior and to have your volumes exported as single slice disks, you need to do either of the following:

- Use the `ldm set -vdsdev` command in Logical Domains 1.2 software, and set the `slice` option for all volumes you want to export as single slice disks. Refer to the [ldm\(1M\)](#) man page for more information about this command.
- Add the following line to the `/etc/system` file on the service domain.

```
set vds:vd_volume_force_slice = 1
```

Note – Setting this tunable forces the export of all volumes as single slice disks, and you cannot export any volume as a full disk.

Summary of How Different Types of Backends Are Exported

Backend	No Slice Option	Slice Option Set
Disk (disk slice 2)	Full disk ¹	Single slice disk ²

¹ Export the entire disk.

² Export only slice 2

Backend	No Slice Option	Slice Option Set
Disk slice (not slice 2)	Single slice disk ³	Single slice disk
File	Full disk	Single slice disk
Volume, including ZFS, SVM, or VxVM	Full disk	Single slice disk

³ A slice is always exported as a single slice disk.

Guidelines for Exporting Files and Disk Slices as Virtual Disks

This section includes guidelines for exporting a file and a disk slice as a virtual disk.

Using the Loopback File (`lofi`) Driver

It is possible to use the loopback file (`lofi`) driver to export a file as a virtual disk. However, doing this adds an extra driver layer and impacts performance of the virtual disk. Instead, you can directly export a file as a full disk or as a single slice disk. See “[File and Volume](#)” on page 100.

Directly or Indirectly Exporting a Disk Slice

To export a slice as a virtual disk either directly or indirectly (for example through a SVM volume), ensure that the slice does not start on the first block (block 0) of the physical disk by using the `prtvtoc(1M)` command.

If you directly or indirectly export a disk slice which starts on the first block of a physical disk, you might overwrite the partition table of the physical disk and make all partitions of that disk inaccessible.

Configuring Virtual Disk Multipathing

If a virtual disk backend is accessible through different service domains, then you can configure virtual disk multipathing so that the virtual disk in a guest domain remains accessible if a service domain goes down. An example of a virtual disk backend accessible through different service domains is a file on a network file system (NFS) server or a shared physical disk connected to several service domains.

To enable virtual disk multipathing, you must export a virtual disk backend from the different service domains and add it to the same multipathing group (`mpgroup`). The `mpgroup` is identified by a name and is configured when the virtual disk backend is exported.

The following figure illustrates how to configure virtual disk multipathing. In this example, a multipathing group named **foo** is used to create a virtual disk, whose backend is accessible from two service domains: primary and alternate.

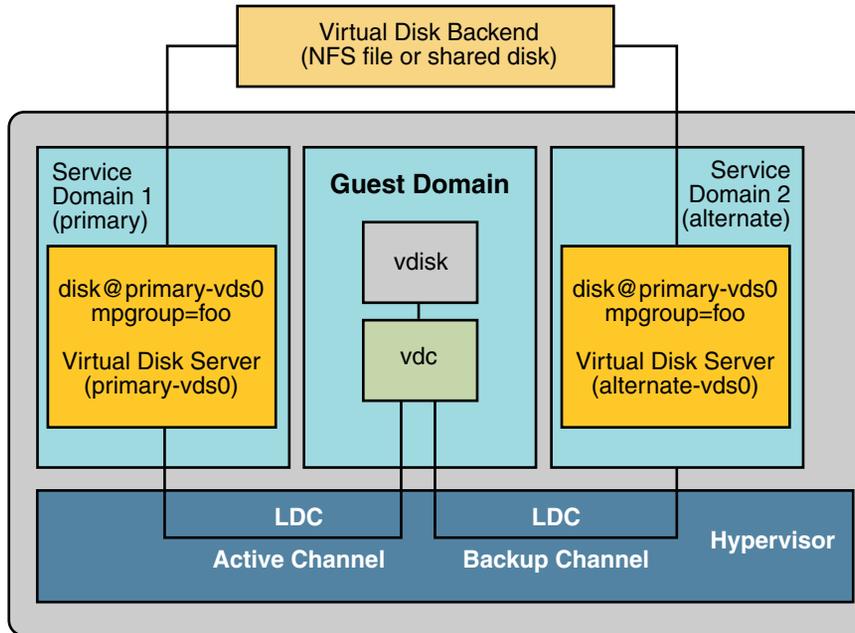


FIGURE 6-2 Configuring Virtual Disk Multipathing

▼ Configure Virtual Disk Multipathing

- 1 Export the virtual backend from the primary service domain.

```
# ldm add-vdsdev mpgroup=foo backend-path1 volume@primary-vds0
```

Where *backend-path1* is the path to the virtual disk backend from the primary domain.

- 2 Export the same virtual backend from the alternate service domain.

```
# ldm add-vdsdev mpgroup=foo backend-path2 volume@alternate-vds0
```

Where *backend-path2* is the path to the virtual disk backend from the alternate domain.

Note – *backend-path1* and *backend-path2* are paths to the same virtual disk backend, but from two different domains (primary and alternate). These paths might be the same or might be different depending on the configuration of the primary and alternate domains. The *volume* name is a user choice. It might be the same or different for both commands.

- 3 Export the virtual disk to the guest domain.

```
# ldm add-vdisk disk-name volume@primary-vds0 ldom
```

Note – Although the virtual disk backend is exported several times through different service domains, you assign only one virtual disk to the guest domain and associate it with the virtual disk backend through any of the service domains.

More Information Result of Virtual Disk Multipathing

Once you configure the virtual disk with multipathing and start the guest domain, the virtual disk accesses its backend through the service domain it has been associated with (the primary domain in this example). If this service domain becomes unavailable, then the virtual disk tries to access its backend through a difference service domain that is part of the same multipathing group.



Caution – When defining a multipathing group (`mpgroup`), ensure that the virtual disk backends that are part of the same `mpgroup` are effectively the same virtual disk backend. If you add different virtual disks' backends into the same `mpgroup`, you might see some unexpected behavior, and you can potentially lose or corrupt data stored on the backends.

CD, DVD and ISO Images

You can export a compact disc (CD) or digital versatile disc (DVD) the same way you export any regular disk. To export a CD or DVD to a guest domain, export slice 2 of the CD or DVD device as a full disk; that is, without the `slice` option.

Note – You cannot export the CD or DVD drive itself; you only can export the CD or DVD that is inside the CD or DVD drive. Therefore, a CD or DVD must be present inside the drive before you can export it. Also, to be able to export a CD or DVD, that CD or DVD cannot be in use in the service domain. In particular, the Volume Management file system, `volfs(7FS)` service must not use the CD or DVD. See “[Export a CD or DVD From the Service Domain to the Guest Domain](#)” on page 106 for instructions on how to remove the device from use by `volfs`.

If you have an International Organization for Standardization (ISO) image of a CD or DVD stored in file or on a volume, and export that file or volume as a full disk then it appears as a CD or DVD in the guest domain.

When you export a CD, DVD, or an ISO image, it automatically appears as a read-only device in the guest domain. However, you cannot perform any CD control operations from the guest domain; that is, you cannot start, stop, or eject the CD from the guest domain. If the exported CD, DVD, or ISO image is bootable, the guest domain can be booted on the corresponding virtual disk.

For example, if you export a Solaris OS installation DVD, you can boot the guest domain on the virtual disk that corresponds to that DVD and install the guest domain from that DVD. To do so, when the guest domain reaches the ok prompt, use the following command.

```
ok boot /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@n:f
```

Where *n* is the index of the virtual disk representing the exported DVD.

Note – If you export a Solaris OS installation DVD and boot a guest domain on the virtual disk that corresponds to that DVD to install the guest domain, then you cannot change the DVD during the installation. So you might need to skip any step of the installation requesting a different CD/DVD, or you will need to provide an alternate path to access this requested media.

▼ Export a CD or DVD From the Service Domain to the Guest Domain

- 1 From the service domain, check whether the volume management daemon, `vold(1M)`, is running and online.

```
service# svcs volfs
STATE          STIME          FMRI
online         12:28:12      svc:/system/filesystem/volfs:default
```

- 2 Do one of the following.

- If the volume management daemon is not running or online, go to Step 5.
- If the volume management daemon is running and online, as in the example in Step 1, do the following:

- a. Edit the `/etc/vold.conf` file and comment out the line starting with the following words.

```
use cdrom drive...
```

See the `vold.conf(4)` man page.

- b. Insert the CD or DVD in the CD or DVD drive.

- c. From the service domain, restart the volume management file system service.

```
service# svcadm refresh volfs
service# svcadm restart volfs
```

- 3 From the service domain, find the disk path for the CD-ROM device.

```
service# cdrw -l
Looking for CD devices...
```

Node	Connected Device	Device type
/dev/rdisk/c1t0d0s2	MATSHITA CD-RW CW-8124 DZ13	CD Reader/Writer

4 Export the CD or DVD disk device as a full disk.

```
primary# ldm add-vdsdev /dev/dsk/c1t0d0s2 cdrom@primary-vds0
```

5 Assign the exported CD or DVD to the guest domain.

The following shows how to assign the exported CD or DVD to domain `ldg1`:

```
primary# ldm add-vdisk cdrom cdrom@primary-vds0 ldg1
```

More Information Exporting a CD or DVD Multiple Times

A CD or DVD can be exported multiple times and assigned to different guest domains. See [“Export a Virtual Disk Backend Multiple Times” on page 93](#) for more information.

▼ Export an ISO Image From the primary Domain to Install a Guest Domain

This procedure shows how to export an ISO image from the primary domain and use it to install a guest domain. This procedure assumes that both the primary domain and the guest domain are configured.

For example, the following `ldm list` shows that both the primary and `ldom1` domains are configured:

```
# ldm list
NAME          STATE   FLAGS  CONS  VCPU  MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
primary      active -n-cv  SP    4     4G     0.3%  15m
ldom1        active -t---  5000  4     1G     25%   8m
```

1 Add a virtual disk server device to export the ISO image.

In this example, the ISO image is `/export/images/so1-10-u5-ga-sparc-dvd.iso`.

```
# ldm add-vdsdev /export/images/so1-10-u5-ga-sparc-dvd.iso dvd-iso@primary-vds0
```

2 Stop the guest domain.

In this example, the logical domain is `ldom1`.

```
# ldm stop-domain ldom1
LDom ldom1 stopped
```

3 Add the virtual disk for the ISO image to the logical domain.

In this example, the logical domain is `ldom1`.

```
# ldm add-vdisk s10-dvd dvd-iso@primary-vds0 ldom1
```

4 Restart the guest domain.

In this example, the logical domain is `ldom1`.

```
# ldm start-domain ldom1
```

```
LDom ldom1 started
```

```
# ldm list
```

NAME	STATE	FLAGS	CONS	VCPU	MEMORY	UTIL	UPTIME
primary	active	-n-cv	SP	4	4G	0.4%	25m
ldom1	active	-t---	5000	4	1G	0.0%	0s

In this example, the `ldm list` command shows that the `ldom1` domain has just been started.

5 Connect to the guest domain.

```
# telnet localhost 5000
```

```
Trying 127.0.0.1...
```

```
Connected to localhost.
```

```
Escape character is '^]'.
```

```
Connecting to console "ldom1" in group "ldom1" ....
```

```
Press ~? for control options ..
```

6 Verify the existence of the ISO image as a virtual disk.

```
{0} ok show-disks
```

```
a) /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@1
```

```
b) /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@0
```

```
q) NO SELECTION
```

```
Enter Selection, q to quit: q
```

In this example, the newly added device is

```
/virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@1.
```

7 Boot the guest domain to install from the ISO image.

In this example, boot from the `f` slice of the

```
/virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@1
```

 disk.

```
{0} ok boot /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@1:f
```

Virtual Disk Timeout

By default, if the service domain providing access to a virtual disk backend is down, all I/O from the guest domain to the corresponding virtual disk is blocked. The I/O automatically is resumed when the service domain is operational and is servicing I/O requests to the virtual disk backend.

However, there are some cases when file systems or applications might not want the I/O operation to block, but for it to fail and report an error if the service domain is down for too long. It is now possible to set a connection timeout period for each virtual disk, which can then be used to establish a connection between the virtual disk client on a guest domain and the virtual disk server on the service domain. When that timeout period is reached, any pending I/O and any new I/O will fail as long as the service domain is down and the connection between the virtual disk client and server is not reestablished.

This timeout can be set by doing one of the following:

- Using the `ldm add-vdisk` command.

```
ldm add-vdisk timeout=seconds disk-name volume-name@service-name ldom
```

- Using the `ldm set-vdisk` command.

```
ldm set-vdisk timeout=seconds disk-name ldom
```

Specify the timeout in seconds. If the timeout is set to `0`, the timeout is disabled and I/O is blocked while the service domain is down (this is the default setting and behavior).

Alternatively, the timeout can be set by adding the following line to the `/etc/system` file on the guest domain.

```
set vdc:vdc_timeout=seconds
```

Note – If this tunable is set, it overwrites any timeout setting done using the `ldm` CLI. Also, the tunable sets the timeout for all virtual disks in the guest domain.

Virtual Disk and SCSI

If a physical SCSI disk or LUN is exported as a full disk, the corresponding virtual disk supports the user SCSI command interface, `uscsci(7I)` and multihost disk control operations `mhd(7i)`. Other virtual disks, such as virtual disks having a file or a volume as a backend, do not support these interfaces.

As a consequence, applications or product features using SCSI commands (such as SVM metaset, or Solaris Cluster shared devices) can be used in guest domains only with virtual disks having a physical SCSI disk as a backend.

Note – SCSI operations are effectively executed by the service domain, which manages the physical SCSI disk or LUN used as a virtual disk backend. In particular, SCSI reservations are done by the service domain. Therefore, applications running in the service domain and in guest domains should not issue SCSI commands to the same physical SCSI disks; otherwise, this can lead to an unexpected disk state.

Virtual Disk and the `format(1M)` Command

The `format(1M)` command recognizes all virtual disks that are present in a domain. However, for virtual disks that are exported as single-slice disks, the `format` command cannot change the partition table of the virtual disk. Commands such as `label` will fail unless you try to write a disk label similar to the one that is already associated with the virtual disk.

Virtual disks whose backends are SCSI disks support all `format(1M)` subcommands. Virtual disks whose backends are not SCSI disks do not support some `format(1M)` subcommands, such as `repair` and `defect`. In that case, the behavior of `format(1M)` is similar to the behavior of Integrated Drive Electronics (IDE) disks.

Using ZFS With Virtual Disks

This section describes using the Zettabyte File System (ZFS) to store virtual disk backends exported to guest domains. ZFS provides a convenient and powerful solution to create and manage virtual disk backends. ZFS enables:

- Storing disk images in ZFS volumes or ZFS files
- Using snapshots to backup disk images
- Using clones to duplicate disk images and provision additional domains

Refer to the *Solaris ZFS Administration Guide* for more information about using the ZFS.

In the following descriptions and examples, the primary domain is also the service domain where disk images are stored.

Configuring a ZFS Pool in a Service Domain

To store the disk images, first create a ZFS storage pool in the service domain. For example, this command creates the ZFS storage pool `ldmpool` containing the disk `c1t50d0` in the primary domain.

```
primary# zpool create ldmpool c1t50d0
```

Storing Disk Images With ZFS

The following command creates a disk image for guest domain `ldg1`. A ZFS file system for this guest domain is created, and all disk images of this guest domain will be stored on that file system.

```
primary# zfs create ldmpool/ldg1
```

Disk images can be stored on ZFS volumes or ZFS files. Creating a ZFS volume, whatever its size, is quick using the `zfs create -V` command. On the other hand, ZFS files have to be created using the `mkfile` command. The command can take some time to complete, especially if the file to create is quite large, which is often the case when creating a disk image.

Both ZFS volumes and ZFS files can take advantage of ZFS features such as snapshot and clone, but a ZFS volume is a pseudo device while a ZFS file is a regular file.

If the disk image is to be used as a virtual disk onto which the Solaris OS is to be installed, then it should be large enough to contain:

- Installed software – about 6 gigabytes
- Swap partition – about 1 gigabyte
- Extra space to store system data – at least 1 gigabyte

Therefore, the size of a disk image to install the entire Solaris OS should be at least 8 gigabytes.

Examples of Storing Disk Images With ZFS

The following examples:

1. Create a 10-gigabyte image on a ZFS volume or file.
2. Export the ZFS volume or file as a virtual disk. The syntax to export a ZFS volume or file is the same, but the path to the backend is different.
3. Assign the exported ZFS volume or file to a guest domain.

When the guest domain is started, the ZFS volume or file appears as a virtual disk on which the Solaris OS can be installed.

▼ Create a Disk Image Using a ZFS Volume

- For example, create a 10-gigabyte disk image on a ZFS volume.

```
primary# zfs create -V 10gb ldmpool/ldg1/disk0
```

▼ Create a Disk Image Using a ZFS File

- For example, create a 10-gigabyte disk image on a ZFS volume.

```
primary# zfs create ldmpool/ldg1/disk0
primary# mkfile 10g /ldmpool/ldg1/disk0/file
```

▼ Export the ZFS Volume

- Export the ZFS volume as a virtual disk.

```
primary# ldm add-vdsdev /dev/zvol/dsk/ldmpool/ldg1/disk0 ldg1_disk0@primary-vds0
```

▼ Export the ZFS File

- Export the ZFS file as a virtual disk.

```
primary# ldm add-vdsdev /ldmpool/ldg1/disk0/file ldg1_disk0@primary-vds0
```

▼ Assign the ZFS Volume or File to a Guest Domain

- Assign the ZFS volume or file to a guest domain; in this example, `ldg1`.

```
primary# ldm add-vdisk disk0 ldg1_disk0@primary-vds0 ldg1
```

Creating a Snapshot of a Disk Image

When your disk image is stored on a ZFS volume or on a ZFS file, you can create snapshots of this disk image by using the ZFS snapshot command.

Before you create a snapshot of the disk image, ensure that the disk is not currently in use in the guest domain to ensure that data currently stored on the disk image are coherent. There are several ways to ensure that a disk is not in use in a guest domain. You can either:

- Stop and unbind the guest domain. This is the safest solution, and this is the only solution available if you want to create a snapshot of a disk image used as the boot disk of a guest domain.
- Alternatively, you can unmount any slices of the disk you want to snapshot used in the guest domain, and ensure that no slice is in use the guest domain.

In this example, because of the ZFS layout, the command to create a snapshot of the disk image is the same whether the disk image is stored on a ZFS volume or on a ZFS file.

▼ Create a Snapshot of a Disk Image

- Create a snapshot of the disk image that was created for the `ldg1` domain, for example.

```
primary# zfs snapshot ldmpool/ldg1/disk0@version_1
```

Using Clone to Provision a New Domain

Once you have created a snapshot of a disk image, you can duplicate this disk image by using the ZFS clone command. Then the cloned image can be assigned to another domain. Cloning a boot disk image quickly creates a boot disk for a new guest domain without having to perform the entire Solaris OS installation process.

For example, if the `disk0` created was the boot disk of domain `ldg1`, do the following to clone that disk to create a boot disk for domain `ldg2`.

```
primary# zfs create ldmpool/ldg2
primary# zfs clone ldmpool/ldg1/disk0@version_1 ldmpool/ldg2/disk0
```

Then `ldmpool/ldg2/disk0` can be exported as a virtual disk and assigned to the new `ldg2` domain. The domain `ldg2` can directly boot from that virtual disk without having to go through the OS installation process.

Cloning a Boot Disk Image

When a boot disk image is cloned, the new image is exactly the same as the original boot disk, and it contains any information that has been stored on the boot disk before the image was cloned, such as the host name, the IP address, the mounted file system table, or any system configuration or tuning.

Because the mounted file system table is the same on the original boot disk image and on the cloned disk image, the cloned disk image has to be assigned to the new domain in the same order as it was on the original domain. For example, if the boot disk image was assigned as the first disk of the original domain, then the cloned disk image has to be assigned as the first disk of the new domain. Otherwise, the new domain is unable to boot.

If the original domain was configured with a static IP address, then a new domain using the cloned image starts with the same IP address. In that case, you can change the network configuration of the new domain by using the `sys-unconfig(1M)` command. To avoid this problem you can also create a snapshot of a disk image of an unconfigured system.

If the original domain was configured with the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), then a new domain using the cloned image also uses DHCP. In that case, you do not need to change the network configuration of the new domain because it automatically receives an IP address and its network configuration as it boots.

Note – The host ID of a domain is not stored on the boot disk, but it is assigned by the Logical Domains Manager when you create a domain. Therefore, when you clone a disk image, the new domain does not keep the host ID of the original domain.

▼ Create a Snapshot of a Disk Image of an Unconfigured System

- 1 Bind and start the original domain.
- 2 Execute the `sys-unconfig` command.
- 3 After the `sys-unconfig` command completes, the domain halts.
- 4 Stop and unbind the domain; do *not* reboot it.
- 5 Take a snapshot of the domain boot disk image.

For example:

```
primary# zfs snapshot ldmpool/ldg1/disk0@unconfigured
```

At this point you have the snapshot of the boot disk image of an unconfigured system.

- 6 Clone this image to create a new domain which, when first booted, asks for the configuration of the system.

Using Volume Managers in a Logical Domains Environment

This section describes using volume managers in a Logical Domains environment.

Using Virtual Disks on Top of Volume Managers

Any Zettabyte File System (ZFS), Solaris Volume Manager (SVM), or Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) volume can be exported from a service domain to a guest domain as a virtual disk. A volume can be exported either as a single slice disk (if the `slice` option is specified with the `ldm add-vdsdev` command) or as a full disk.

Note – The remainder of this section uses an SVM volume as an example. However, the discussion also applies to ZFS and VxVM volumes.

The following examples show how to export a volume as a single slice disk.

The virtual disk in the guest domain (for example, `/dev/dsk/c0d2s0`) is directly mapped to the associated volume (for example, `/dev/md/dsk/d0`), and data stored onto the virtual disk from the guest domain are directly stored onto the associated volume with no extra metadata. So data stored on the virtual disk from the guest domain can also be directly accessed from the service domain through the associated volume.

Examples

- If the SVM volume `d0` is exported from the primary domain to `domain1`, then the configuration of `domain1` requires some extra steps.

```
primary# metainit d0 3 1 c2t70d0s6 1 c2t80d0s6 1 c2t90d0s6
primary# ldm add-vdsdev options=slice /dev/md/dsk/d0 vol3@primary-vds0
primary# ldm add-vdisk vdisk3 vol3@primary-vds0 domain1
```

- After `domain1` has been bound and started, the exported volume appears as `/dev/dsk/c0d2s0`, for example, and you can use it.

```
domain1# newfs /dev/rdisk/c0d2s0
domain1# mount /dev/dsk/c0d2s0 /mnt
domain1# echo test-domain1 > /mnt/file
```

- After `domain1` has been stopped and unbound, data stored on the virtual disk from `domain1` can be directly accessed from the primary domain through SVM volume `d0`.

```
primary# mount /dev/md/dsk/d0 /mnt
primary# cat /mnt/file
test-domain1
```

Using Virtual Disks on Top of SVM

When a RAID or mirror SVM volume is used as a virtual disk by another domain, then it has to be exported without setting the exclusive (`excl`) option. Otherwise, if there is a failure on one of the components of the SVM volume, then the recovery of the SVM volume using the `metareplace` command or using a hot spare does not start. The `metastat` command sees the volume as resynchronizing, but the resynchronization does not progress.

For example, `/dev/md/dsk/d0` is a RAID SVM volume exported as a virtual disk with the `excl` option to another domain, and `d0` is configured with some hot-spare devices. If a component of `d0` fails, SVM replaces the failing component with a hot spare and resynchronizes the SVM volume. However, the resynchronization does not start. The volume is reported as resynchronizing, but the resynchronization does not progress.

```
# metastat d0
d0: RAID
    State: Resyncing
    Hot spare pool: hsp000
    Interlace: 32 blocks
```

```

    Size: 20097600 blocks (9.6 GB)
Original device:
    Size: 20100992 blocks (9.6 GB)
Device                               Start Block  Dbase   State Reloc
c2t2d0s1                             330         No      Okay   Yes
c4t12d0s1                             330         No      Okay   Yes
/dev/dsk/c10t600C0FF000000000015153295A4B100d0s1 330         No      Resyncing Yes

```

In such a situation, the domain using the SVM volume as a virtual disk has to be stopped and unbound to complete the resynchronization. Then the SVM volume can be resynchronized using the `metasync` command.

```
# metasync d0
```

Using Virtual Disks When VxVM Is Installed

When the Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) is installed on your system, and if Veritas Dynamic Multipathing (DMP) is enabled on a physical disk or partition you want to export as virtual disk, then you have to export that disk or partition without setting the (non-default) `excl` option. Otherwise, you receive an error in `/var/adm/messages` while binding a domain that uses such a disk.

```
vd_setup_vd(): ldi_open_by_name(/dev/dsk/c4t12d0s2) = errno 16
vds_add_vd(): Failed to add vdisk ID 0
```

You can check if Veritas DMP is enabled by checking multipathing information in the output of the command `vxdisk list`; for example:

```
# vxdisk list Disk_3
Device:      Disk_3
devicetag:  Disk_3
type:       auto
info:       format=none
flags:      online ready private autoconfig invalid
pubpaths:   block=/dev/vx/dmp/Disk_3s2 char=/dev/vx/rmp/Disk_3s2
guid:       -
udid:       SEAGATE%5FST336753LSUN36G%5FDISKS%5F3032333948303144304E0000
site:       -
Multipathing information:
numpaths:   1
c4t12d0s2  state=enabled
```

Alternatively, if Veritas DMP is enabled on a disk or a slice that you want to export as a virtual disk with the `excl` option set, then you can disable DMP using the `vxdkmpadm` command. For example:

```
# vxdkmpadm -f disable path=/dev/dsk/c4t12d0s2
```

Using Volume Managers on Top of Virtual Disks

This section describes using volume managers on top of virtual disks.

Using ZFS on Top of Virtual Disks

Any virtual disk can be used with ZFS. A ZFS storage pool (`zpool`) can be imported in any domain that sees all the storage devices that are part of this `zpool`, regardless of whether the domain sees all these devices as virtual devices or real devices.

Using SVM on Top of Virtual Disks

Any virtual disk can be used in the SVM local disk set. For example, a virtual disk can be used for storing the SVM metadvice state database, `metadb(1M)`, of the local disk set or for creating SVM volumes in the local disk set.

Any virtual disk whose backend is a SCSI disk can be used in a SVM shared disk set, `metaset(1M)`. Virtual disks whose backends are not SCSI disks cannot be added into a SVM share disk set. Trying to add a virtual disk whose backend is not a SCSI disk into a SVM shared disk set fails with an error similar to the following.

```
# metaset -s test -a c2d2
metaset: domain1: test: failed to reserve any drives
```

Using VxVM on Top of Virtual Disks

For VxVM support in guest domains, refer to the VxVM documentation from Symantec.

Using Virtual Networks

This chapter describes how to use a virtual network with Logical Domains software, and covers the following topics:

- “Introduction to a Virtual Network” on page 119
- “Virtual Switch” on page 120
- “Virtual Network Device” on page 120
- “Managing a Virtual Switch” on page 122
- “Managing a Virtual Network Device” on page 123
- “Virtual Device Identifier and Network Interface Name” on page 125
- “Assigning MAC Addresses Automatically or Manually” on page 128
- “Using Network Adapters With LDomS” on page 130
- “Configuring Virtual Switch and Service Domain for NAT and Routing” on page 131
- “Configuring IPMP in a Logical Domains Environment” on page 133
- “Using VLAN Tagging With Logical Domains Software” on page 136
- “Using NIU Hybrid I/O” on page 138
- “Using Link Aggregation With a Virtual Switch” on page 141
- “Configuring Jumbo Frames” on page 142

Introduction to a Virtual Network

A virtual network allows domains to communicate with each other without using any external physical networks. A virtual network also can allow domains to use the same physical network interface to access a physical network and communicate with remote systems. A virtual network is created by having a virtual switch to which you can connect virtual network devices.

Virtual Switch

A virtual switch (vsw) is a component running in a service domain and managed by the virtual switch driver. A virtual switch can be connected to some guest domains to enable network communications between those domains. In addition, if the virtual switch is associated also with a physical network interface, then this allows network communications between guest domains and the physical network over the physical network interface. A virtual switch also has a network interface, `vswn`, which allows the service domain to communicate with the other domains connected to that virtual switch. It can be used like any regular network interface and configured with the `ifconfig(1M)` command.

Note – When a virtual switch is added to a service domain, its network interface is not plumbed. So, by default, the service domain is unable to communicate with the guest domains connected to its virtual switch. To enable network communications between guest domains and the service domain, the network interface of the associated virtual switch must be plumbed and configured in the service domain. See [“Enabling Networking Between the Control/Service Domain and Other Domains”](#) on page 63 for instructions.

Virtual Network Device

A virtual network (vnet) device is a virtual device that is defined in a domain connected to a virtual switch. A virtual network device is managed by the virtual network driver, and it is connected to a virtual network through the hypervisor using logical domain channels (LDCs).

A virtual network device can be used as a network interface with the name `vnetn`, which can be used like any regular network interface and configured with the `ifconfig(1M)` command.

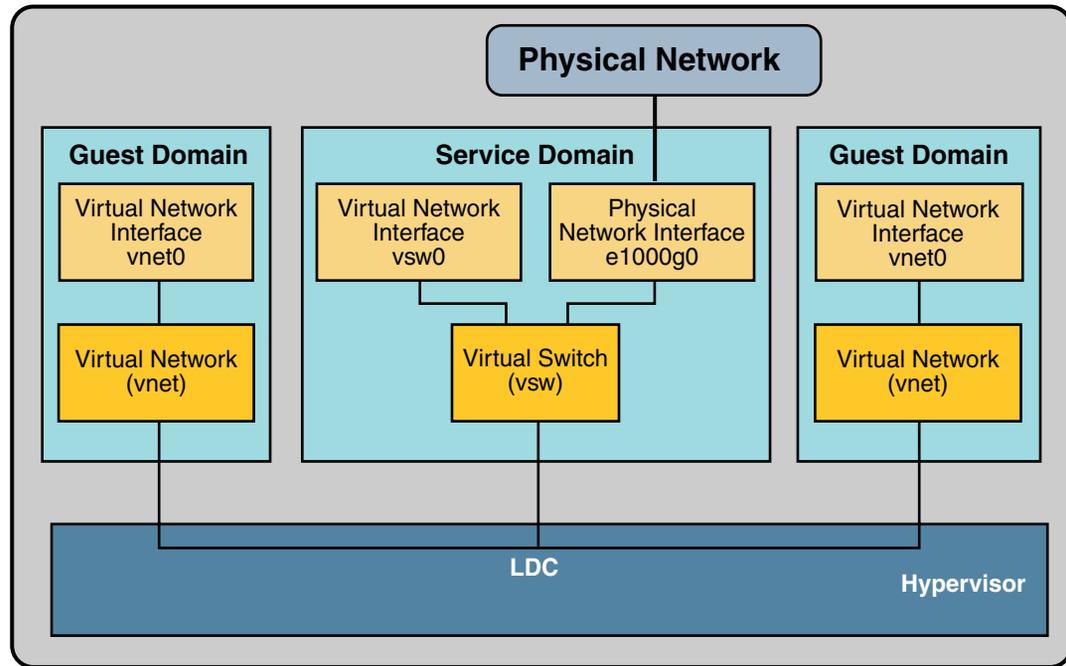


FIGURE 7-1 Setting Up a Virtual Network

Following is an explanation for the example in [Figure 7-1](#).

- The virtual switch in the service domain is connected to the guest domains. This allows guest domains to communicate with each other.
- The virtual switch also is connected to the physical network interface `e1000g0`. This allows guest domains to communicate with the physical network.
- The virtual switch network interface `vsw0` is plumbed in the service domain, so this allows the two guest domains to communicate with the service domain.
- The virtual switch network interface `vsw0` in the service domain can be configured using the `ifconfig(1M)` command.
- The virtual network interfaces `vnet0` in the guest domains can be configured using the `ifconfig(1M)` command.

Basically the virtual switch behaves like a regular physical network switch and switches network packets between the different systems, such as guest domains, service domain, and physical network, to which it is connected.

Managing a Virtual Switch

This section describes adding a virtual switch to a domain, setting options for a virtual switch, and removing a virtual switch.

▼ Add a Virtual Switch

- Use the following command syntax to add a virtual switch.

```
# ldm add-vsw [default-vlan-id=vlan-id] [pvid=port-vlan-id] [vid=vlan-id1,vlan-id2,...]
[mac-addr=num] [net-dev=device] [mode=sc] [mtu=size] [id=switch-id] vswitch-name ldom
```

Where:

- `default-vlan-id=vlan-id` specifies the default virtual local area network (VLAN) to which a virtual switch and its associated virtual network devices belong to implicitly, in untagged mode. It serves as the default port VLAN id (pvid) of the virtual switch and virtual network devices. Without this option, the default value of this property is 1. Normally, you would not need to use this option. It is provided only as a way to change the default value of 1. See [“Using VLAN Tagging With Logical Domains Software” on page 136](#) for more information.
- `pvid=port-vlan-id` specifies the VLAN to which the virtual switch needs to be a member, in untagged mode. See [“Using VLAN Tagging With Logical Domains Software” on page 136](#) for more information.
- `vid=vlan-id` specifies one or more VLANs to which a virtual switch needs to be a member, in tagged mode. See [“Using VLAN Tagging With Logical Domains Software” on page 136](#) for more information.
- `mac-addr=num` is the MAC address to be used by this switch. The number must be in standard octet notation; for example, 80:00:33:55:22:66. If you do not specify a MAC address, the switch is automatically assigned an address from the range of public MAC addresses allocated to the Logical Domains Manager. See [“Assigning MAC Addresses Automatically or Manually” on page 128](#) for more information.
- `net-dev=device` is the path to the network device over which this switch operates.
- `mode=sc` enables virtual networking support for prioritized processing of Solaris Cluster heartbeat packets in a Logical Domains environment. Applications like Solaris Cluster need to ensure that high priority heartbeat packets are not dropped by congested virtual network and switch devices. This option prioritizes Solaris Cluster heartbeat frames and ensures that they are transferred in a reliable manner.

You must set this option when running Solaris Cluster in a Logical Domains environment and using guest domains as Solaris Cluster nodes. Do *not* set this option when you are not running Solaris Cluster software in guest domains, because you could impact virtual network performance.

- `mtu=size` specifies the maximum transmission unit (MTU) of a virtual switch device. Valid values are in the range of 1500-16000.
- `id=switch-id` is the ID of a new virtual switch device. By default, ID values are generated automatically, so set this property if you need to match an existing device name in the OS. See [“Virtual Device Identifier and Network Interface Name”](#) on page 125.
- `vswitch-name` is the unique name of the switch that is to be exported as a service. Clients (network) can attach to this service.
- `ldom` specifies the logical domain in which to add a virtual switch.

▼ Set Options for an Existing Virtual Switch

- Use the following command syntax to set options for a virtual switch that already exists.

```
# ldm set-vsw [pvid=port-vlan-id] [vid=vlan-id1,vlan-id2,...] [mac-addr=num]
[net-dev=device] [mode=[sc]] [mtu=size] vswitch-name
```

Where:

- `mode=` (left blank) stops special processing of Solaris Cluster heartbeat packets.
- Otherwise, the command arguments are the same as described in [“Add a Virtual Switch”](#) on page 122.

▼ Remove a Virtual Switch

- Use the following command syntax to remove a virtual switch.

```
# ldm rm-vsw [-f] vswitch-name
```

Where:

- `-f` attempts to force the removal of a virtual switch. The removal might fail.
- `vswitch-name` is the name of the switch that is to be removed as a service.

Managing a Virtual Network Device

This section describes adding a virtual network device to a domain, setting options for an existing virtual network device, and removing a virtual network device.

▼ Add a Virtual Network Device

- Use the following command syntax to add a virtual network device.

```
# ldm add-vnet [mac-addr=num] [mode=hybrid] [pvid=port-vlan-id]
[vid=vlan-id1,vlan-id2,...] [mtu=size] [id=network-id] if-name vswitch-name ldom
```

Where:

- `mac-addr=num` is the MAC address for this network device. The number must be in standard octet notation; for example, `80:00:33:55:22:66`. See [“Assigning MAC Addresses Automatically or Manually” on page 128](#) for more information.
- `mode=hybrid` to request the system to use NIU Hybrid I/O on this vnet if possible. If it is not possible, the system reverts to virtual I/O. This hybrid mode is considered a delayed reconfiguration if set on an active vnet. See [“Using NIU Hybrid I/O” on page 138](#) for more information.
- `pvid=port-vlan-id` specifies the VLAN to which the virtual network device needs to be a member, in untagged mode. See [“Using VLAN Tagging With Logical Domains Software” on page 136](#) for more information.
- `vid=vlan-id` specifies one or more VLANs to which a virtual network device needs to be a member, in tagged mode. See [“Using VLAN Tagging With Logical Domains Software” on page 136](#) for more information.
- `mtu=size` specifies the maximum transmission unit (MTU) of a virtual network device. Valid values are in the range of 1500-16000.
- `id=network-id` is the ID of a new virtual network device. By default, ID values are generated automatically, so set this property if you need to match an existing device name in the OS. See [“Virtual Device Identifier and Network Interface Name” on page 125](#).
- `if-name`, interface name, is a unique name to the logical domain, assigned to this virtual network device instance for reference on subsequent `ldm set-vnet` or `ldm rm-vnet` commands.
- `vswitch-name` is the name of an existing network service (virtual switch) to which to connect.
- `ldom` specifies the logical domain to which to add the virtual network device.

▼ Set Options for an Existing Virtual Network Device

- Use the following command syntax to set options for a virtual network device that already exists.

```
# ldm set-vnet [mac-addr=num] [vswitch=vswitch-name] [mode=[hybrid]]
[pvid=port-vlan-id] [vid=vlan-id1,vlan-id2,...] [mtu=size] if-name ldom
```

Where:

- `mode=` (left blank) disables NIU Hybrid I/O.
- *if-name*, interface name, is the unique name assigned to the virtual network device you want to set.
- *ldom* specifies the logical domain from which to remove the virtual network device.
- Otherwise, the command arguments are the same as described in [“Add a Virtual Network Device”](#) on page 124.

▼ Remove a Virtual Network Device

- Use the following command syntax to remove a virtual network device.

```
# ldm rm-vnet [-f] if-name ldom
```

Where:

- `-f` attempts to force the removal of a virtual network device from a logical domain. The removal might fail.
- *if-name*, interface name, is the unique name assigned to the virtual network device you want to remove.
- *ldom* specifies the logical domain from which to remove the virtual network device.

Virtual Device Identifier and Network Interface Name

When you add a virtual switch or virtual network device to a domain, you can specify its device number by setting the `id` property.

```
# ldm add-vsw [id=switch-id] vswitch-name ldom
# ldm add-vnet [id=network-id] if-name vswitch-name ldom
```

Each virtual switch and virtual network device of a domain has a unique device number that is assigned when the domain is bound. If a virtual switch or virtual network device was added with an explicit device number (by setting the `id` property), the specified device number is used. Otherwise, the system automatically assigns the lowest device number available. In that case, the device number assigned depends on how virtual switch or virtual network devices were added to the system. The device number eventually assigned to a virtual switch or virtual network device is visible in the output of the `ldm list-bindings` command when a domain is bound.

The following example shows that the `primary` domain has one virtual switch, `primary-vsw0`. This virtual switch has a device number of `0` (`switch@0`).

```
primary# ldm list-bindings primary
...
VSW
  NAME          MAC          NET-DEV DEVICE  DEFAULT-VLAN-ID PVID VID MTU MODE
  primary-vsw0  00:14:4f:fb:54:f2 e1000g0 switch@0 1          1 5,6 1500
...
```

The following example shows that the `ldg1` domain has two virtual network devices: `vnet` and `vnet1`. The `vnet` device has a device number of `0` (`network@0`) and the `vnet1` device has a device number of `1` (`network@1`).

```
primary# ldm list-bindings ldg1
...
NETWORK
  NAME SERVICE          DEVICE MAC          MODE PVID VID MTU
  vnet primary-vsw0@primary network@0 00:14:4f:fb:e0:4b hybrid 1 1500
  ...
  vnet1 primary-vsw0@primary network@1 00:14:4f:f8:e1:ea 1 1500
...
```

When a domain with a virtual switch is running the Solaris OS, the virtual switch has a network interface, `vswN`. However, the network interface number of the virtual switch, `N`, is not necessarily the same as the device number of the virtual switch, `n`.

Similarly, when a domain with a virtual network device is running the Solaris OS, the virtual network device has a network interface, `vnetN`. However, the network interface number of the virtual network device, `N`, is not necessarily the same as the device number of the virtual network device, `n`.



Caution – The Solaris OS preserves the mapping between the name of a network interface and a virtual switch or virtual network based on the device number. If a device number is not explicitly assigned to a virtual switch or virtual network device, its device number can change when the domain is unbound and is later bound again. In that case, the network interface name assigned by the OS running in the domain can also change and break the existing configuration of the system. This might happen, for example, when a virtual switch or a virtual network interface is removed from the configuration of the domain.

You cannot use the `ldm list-*` commands to directly determine the Solaris OS network interface name that corresponds to a virtual switch or virtual network device. However, you can obtain this information by using a combination of the output from `ldm list -l` command and from the entries under `/devices` on the Solaris OS.

▼ Find Solaris OS Network Interface Name

In this example procedure, guest domain `ldg1` contains two virtual network devices, `net-a` and `net-c`. To find the Solaris OS network interface name in `ldg1` that corresponds to `net-c`, do the following. This example also shows differences if you are looking for the network interface name of a virtual switch instead of a virtual network device.

- 1 Use the `ldm` command to find the virtual network device number for `net-c`.

```
# ldm list -l ldg1
...
NETWORK
NAME          SERVICE                DEVICE          MAC
net-a         primary-vsw0@primary   network@0       00:14:4f:f8:91:4f
net-c         primary-vsw0@primary   network@2       00:14:4f:f8:dd:68
...
```

The virtual network device number for `net-c` is 2 (`network@2`).

To determine the network interface name of a virtual switch, find the virtual switch device number, *n* as `switch@n`.

- 2 To find the corresponding network interface on `ldg1`, log into `ldg1` and find the entry for this device number under `/devices`.

```
# uname -n
ldg1
# find /devices/virtual-devices@100 -type c -name network@2\*
/devices/virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/network@2:vnet1
```

The network interface name is the part of the entry after the colon; that is, `vnet1`.

To determine the network interface name of a virtual switch, replace the argument to the `-name` option with `virtual-network-switch@n*`. Then, find the network interface with the name `vswN`.

- 3 Plumb `vnet1` to see that it has the MAC address `00:14:4f:f8:dd:68` as shown in the `ldm list -l` output for `net-c` in Step 1.

```
# ifconfig vnet1
vnet1: flags=1000842<BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST,IPv4> mtu 1500 index 3
        inet 0.0.0.0 netmask 0
        ether 0:14:4f:f8:dd:68
```

Assigning MAC Addresses Automatically or Manually

You must have enough media access control (MAC) addresses to assign to the number of logical domains, virtual switches, and virtual networks you are going to use. You can have the Logical Domains Manager automatically assign MAC addresses to a logical domain, a virtual network (vnet), and a virtual switch (vsw), or you can manually assign MAC addresses from your own pool of assigned MAC addresses. The `ldm` subcommands that set MAC addresses are `add-domain`, `add-vsw`, `set-vsw`, `add-vnet`, and `set-vnet`. If you do not specify a MAC address in these subcommands, the Logical Domains Manager assigns one automatically.

The advantage to having the Logical Domains Manager assign the MAC addresses is that it utilizes the block of MAC addresses dedicated for use with logical domains. Also, the Logical Domains Manager detects and prevents MAC address collisions with other Logical Domains Manager instances on the same subnet. This frees you from having to manually manage your pool of MAC addresses.

MAC address assignment happens as soon as a logical domain is created or a network device is configured into a domain. In addition, the assignment is persistent until the device, or the logical domain itself, is removed.

Range of MAC Addresses Assigned to Logical Domains Software

Logical domains have been assigned the following block of 512K MAC addresses:

```
00:14:4F:F8:00:00 ~ 00:14:4F:FF:FF:FF
```

The lower 256K addresses are used by the Logical Domains Manager for *automatic MAC address allocation*, and you *cannot* manually request an address in this range:

```
00:14:4F:F8:00:00 - 00:14:4F:FB:FF:FF
```

You can use the upper half of this range for *manual MAC address allocation*:

```
00:14:4F:FC:00:00 - 00:14:4F:FF:FF:FF
```

Automatic Assignment Algorithm

When you do not specify a MAC address in creating logical domain or a network device, the Logical Domains Manager automatically allocates and assigns a MAC address to that logical domain or network device. To obtain this MAC address, the Logical Domains Manager iteratively attempts to select an address and then checks for potential collisions.

Before selecting a potential address, the Logical Domains Manager first looks to see if it has a recently freed, automatically assigned address saved in a database for this purpose (see [“Freed MAC Addresses” on page 130](#)). If so, the Logical Domains Manager selects its candidate address from the database.

If no recently freed addresses are available, the MAC address is randomly selected from the 256K range of addresses set aside for this purpose. The MAC address is selected randomly to lessen the chance of a duplicate MAC address being selected as a candidate.

The address selected is then checked against other Logical Domains Managers on other systems to prevent duplicate MAC addresses from actually being assigned. The algorithm employed is described in [“Duplicate MAC Address Detection” on page 129](#). If the address is already assigned, the Logical Domains Manager iterates, choosing another address, and again checking for collisions. This continues until a MAC address is found that is not already allocated, or a time limit of 30 seconds has elapsed. If the time limit is reached, then the creation of the device fails, and an error message similar to the following is shown.

```
Automatic MAC allocation failed. Please set the vnet MAC address manually.
```

Duplicate MAC Address Detection

To prevent the same MAC address from being allocated to different devices, one Logical Domains Manager checks with other Logical Domains Managers on other systems by sending a multicast message over the control domain's default network interface, including the address that the Logical Domain Manager wants to assign to the device. The Logical Domains Manager attempting to assign the MAC address waits for one second for a response back. If a different device on another LDom-enabled system has already been assigned that MAC address, the Logical Domains Manager on that system sends back a response containing the MAC address in question. If the requesting Logical Domains Manager receives a response, it knows the chosen MAC address has already been allocated, chooses another, and iterates.

By default, these multicast messages are sent only to other managers on the same subnet; the default time-to-live (TTL) is 1. The TTL can be configured using the Service Management Facilities (SMF) property `ldmd/hops`.

Each Logical Domains Manager is responsible for:

- Listening for multicast messages
- Keeping track of MAC addresses assigned to its domains
- Looking for duplicates
- Responding so that duplicates do not occur

If the Logical Domains Manager on a system is shut down for any reason, duplicate MAC addresses could occur while the Logical Domains Manager is down.

Automatic MAC allocation occurs at the time the logical domain or network device is created and persists until the device or the logical domain is removed.

Freed MAC Addresses

When a logical domain or a device associated with an automatic MAC address is removed, that MAC address is saved in a database of recently freed MAC addresses for possible later use on that system. These MAC addresses are saved to prevent the exhaustion of Internet Protocol (IP) addresses from a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server. When DHCP servers allocate IP addresses, they do so for a period of time (the lease time). The lease duration is often configured to be quite long, generally hours or days. If network devices are created and removed at a high rate without the Logical Domains Manager reusing automatically allocated MAC addresses, the number of MAC addresses allocated could soon overwhelm a typically configured DHCP server.

When a Logical Domains Manager is requested to automatically obtain a MAC address for a logical domain or network device, it first looks to the freed MAC address database to see if there is a previously assigned MAC address it can reuse. If there is a MAC address available from this database, the duplicate MAC address detection algorithm is run. If the MAC address had not been assigned to someone else since it was previously freed, it will be reused and removed from the database. If a collision is detected, the address is simply removed from the database. The Logical Domains Manager then either tries the next address in the database or if none is available, randomly picks a new MAC address.

Using Network Adapters With LDOMs

In a logical domains environment, the virtual switch service running in a service domain can directly interact with GLDv3-compliant network adapters. Though non-GLDv3 compliant network adapters can be used in these systems, the virtual switch cannot interface with them directly. See [“Configuring Virtual Switch and Service Domain for NAT and Routing” on page 131](#) for information about how to use non-GLDv3 compliant network adapters.

For information about using link aggregations, see [“Using Link Aggregation With a Virtual Switch” on page 141](#).

▼ Determine If a Network Adapter Is GLDv3-Compliant

- 1 Use the Solaris OS `dladm(1M)` command, where, for example, `bge0` is the network device name.

```
# dladm show-link bge0
bge0          type: non-vlan  mtu: 1500      device: bge0
```

- 2 Look at type: in the output:
 - GLDv3-compliant drivers will have a type of `non-vlan` or `vlan`.
 - Non-GLDv3-compliant drivers will have a type of `legacy`.

Configuring Virtual Switch and Service Domain for NAT and Routing

The virtual switch (vsw) is a layer-2 switch, that also can be used as a network device in the service domain. The virtual switch can be configured to act only as a switch between the virtual network (vnet) devices in the various logical domains but with no connectivity to a network outside the box through a physical device. In this mode, plumbing the vsw as a network device and enabling IP routing in the service domain enables virtual networks to communicate outside the box using the service domain as a router. This mode of operation is very essential to provide external connectivity to the domains when the physical network adapter is not GLDv3-compliant.

The advantages of this configuration are:

- The virtual switch does not need to use a physical device directly and can provide external connectivity even when the underlying device is not GLDv3-compliant.
- The configuration can take advantage of the IP routing and filtering capabilities of the Solaris OS.

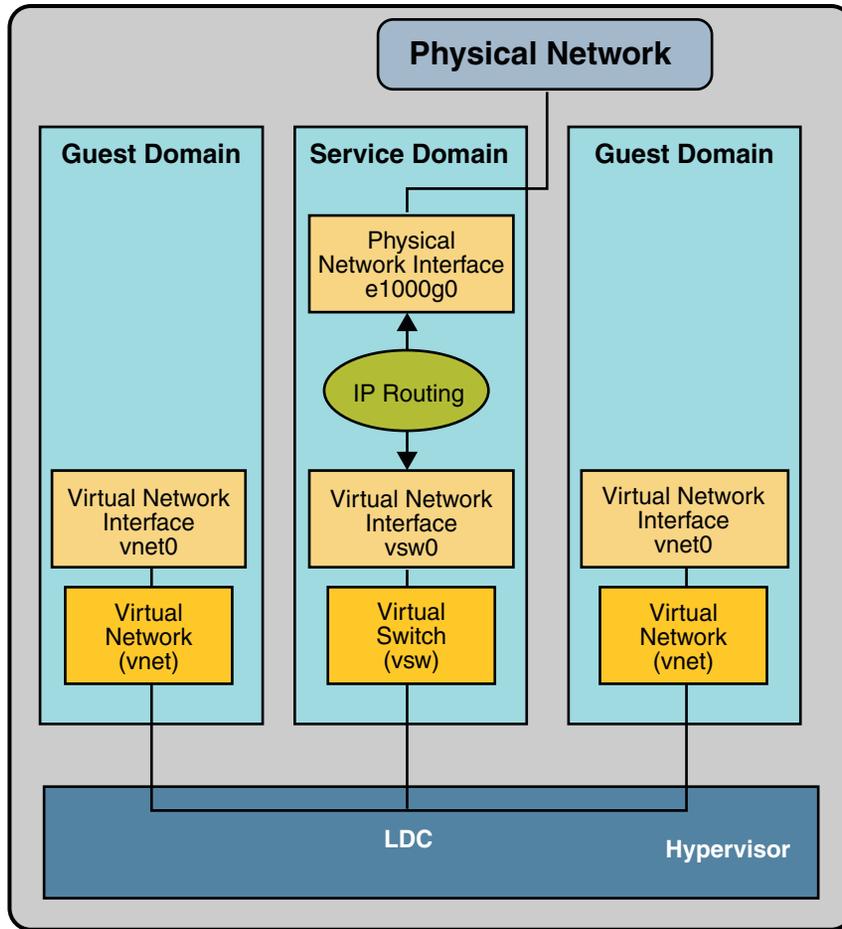


FIGURE 7-2 Virtual Network Routing

▼ Set Up the Virtual Switch to Provide External Connectivity to Domains

- 1 Create a virtual switch with no associated physical device.

If assigning an address, ensure that the virtual switch has a unique MAC address.

```
primary# ldm add-vsw [mac-addr=xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx] primary-vsw0 primary
```

- 2 Plumb the virtual switch as a network device in addition to the physical network device being used by the domain.**

See “[Configure the Virtual Switch as the Primary Interface](#)” on page 63 for more information about plumbing the virtual switch.

- 3 Configure the virtual switch device for DHCP, if needed.**

See “[Configure the Virtual Switch as the Primary Interface](#)” on page 63 for more information about configuring the virtual switch device for DHCP.

- 4 Create the `/etc/dhcp.vsw` file, if needed.**

- 5 Configure IP routing in the service domain, and set up required routing tables in all the domains.**

For information about how to do this, refer to “[Packet Forwarding and Routing on IPv4 Networks](#)” in *System Administration Guide: IP Services*.

Configuring IPMP in a Logical Domains Environment

Internet Protocol Network Multipathing (IPMP) provides fault-tolerance and load balancing across multiple network interface cards. By using IPMP, you can configure one or more interfaces into an IP multipathing group. After configuring IPMP, the system automatically monitors the interfaces in the IPMP group for failure. If an interface in the group fails or is removed for maintenance, IPMP automatically migrates, or fails over, the failed interface's IP addresses. In a Logical Domains environment, either the physical or virtual network interfaces can be configured for failover using IPMP.

Configuring Virtual Network Devices into an IPMP Group in a Logical Domain

A logical domain can be configured for fault-tolerance by configuring its virtual network devices to an IPMP group. When setting up an IPMP group with virtual network devices, in a active-standby configuration, set up the group to use probe-based detection. Link-based detection and failover currently are not supported for virtual network devices in Logical Domains 1.2 software.

The following diagram shows two virtual networks (`vnet1` and `vnet2`) connected to separate virtual switch instances (`vsw0` and `vsw1`) in the service domain, which, in turn, use two different physical interfaces (`e1000g0` and `e1000g1`). In the event of a physical interface failure, the IP layer in `LDom_A` detects failure and loss of connectivity on the corresponding `vnet` through probe-based detection, and automatically fails over to the secondary `vnet` device.

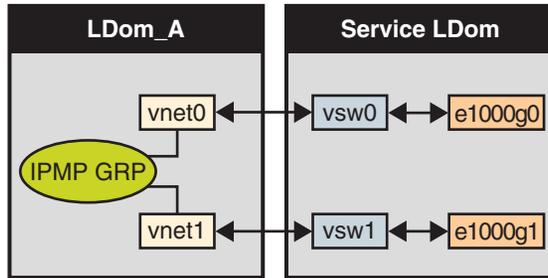


FIGURE 7-3 Two Virtual Networks Connected to Separate Virtual Switch Instances

Further reliability can be achieved in the logical domain by connecting each virtual network device (vnet0 and vnet1) to virtual switch instances in different service domains (as shown in the following diagram). In this case, in addition to network hardware failure, LDom_A can detect virtual network failure and trigger a failover following a service domain crash or shutdown.

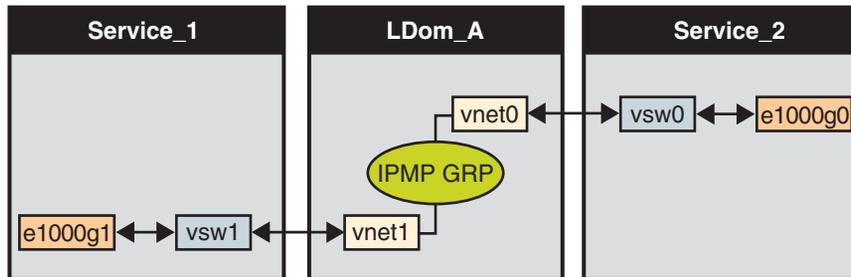


FIGURE 7-4 Each Virtual Network Device Connected to Different Service Domains

Refer to the Solaris 10 *System Administration Guide: IP Services* for more information about how to configure and use IPMP groups.

▼ Configure a Host Route

If no explicit route is configured for a router in the network corresponding to the IPMP interfaces, then one or more explicit host routes to target systems need to be configured for the IPMP probe-based detection to work as expected. Otherwise, probe detection can fail to detect the network failures.

- **Configure a host route.**

```
# route add -host destination-IP gateway-IP -static
```

For example:

```
# route add -host 192.168.102.1 192.168.102.1 -static
```

Refer to “Configuring Target Systems” in *System Administration Guide: IP Services* for more information.

Configuring and Using IPMP in the Service Domain

Network failure detection and recovery can also be set up in a Logical Domains environment by configuring the physical interfaces in the service domain into a IPMP group. To do this, configure the virtual switch in the service domain as a network device, and configure the service domain itself to act as an IP router. (Refer to the Solaris 10 *System Administration Guide: IP Services* for information on setting up IP routing).

Once configured, the virtual switch sends all packets originating from virtual networks (and destined for an external machine), to its IP layer, instead of sending the packets directly by means of the physical device. In the event of a physical interface failure, the IP layer detects failure and automatically re-routes packets through the secondary interface.

Since the physical interfaces are directly being configured into a IPMP group, the group can be set up for either link-based or probe-based detection. The following diagram shows two network interfaces (e1000g0 and e1000g1) configured as part of an IPMP group. The virtual switch instance (vsw0) has been plumbed as a network device to send packets to its IP layer.

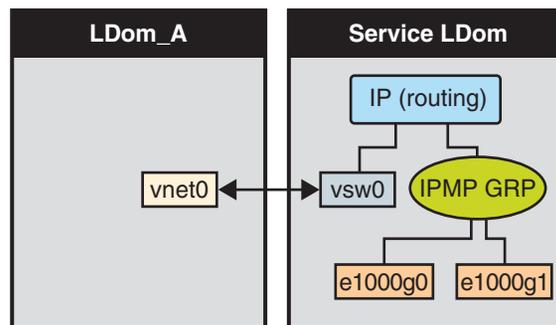


FIGURE 7-5 Two Network Interfaces Configured as Part of IPMP Group

Using VLAN Tagging With Logical Domains Software

As of the release of Solaris 10 10/08 OS and LDomS 1.1 software, 802.1Q VLAN-Tagging support is available in the Logical Domains network infrastructure.

Note – Tagged VLANs are not supported in any of the previous releases for LDomS networking components.

The virtual switch (vsw) and virtual network (vnet) devices support switching of Ethernet packets based on the virtual local area network (VLAN) identifier (ID) and handle the necessary tagging or untagging of Ethernet frames.

You can create multiple VLAN interfaces over a vnet device in a guest domain. You can use the Solaris OS `ifconfig(1M)` command to create a VLAN interface over a virtual network device, the same way it is used to configure a VLAN interface over any other physical network device. The additional requirement in the LDomS environment is that you must assign the vnet to the corresponding VLANs using the Logical Domains Manager CLI commands. Refer to the `ldm(1M)` for complete information about the Logical Domains Manager CLI commands.

Similarly, you can configure VLAN interfaces over a virtual switch device in the service domain. VLAN IDs 2 through 4094 are valid; VLAN ID 1 is reserved as the `default-vlan-id`.

When you create a vnet device on a guest domain, you must assign it to the required VLANs by specifying a port VLAN ID and zero or more VLAN IDs for this vnet, using the `pvid=` and `vid=` arguments to the `ldm add-vnet` command. This configures the virtual switch to support multiple VLANs in the LDomS network and switch packets using both MAC address and VLAN IDs in the network.

Similarly, any VLANs to which the vsw device itself should belong, when plumbed as a network interface, must be configured in the vsw device using the `pvid=` and `vid=` arguments to the `ldm add-vsw` command.

You can change the VLANs to which a device belongs using `ldm set-vnet` or `ldm set-vsw` command.

Port VLAN ID (PVID)

The PVID indicates a VLAN to which the virtual network device needs to be a member, in untagged mode. In this case, the vsw device provides the necessary tagging or untagging of frames for the vnet device over the VLAN specified by its PVID. Any outbound frames from the virtual network that are untagged are tagged with its PVID by the virtual switch. Inbound frames tagged with this PVID are untagged by the virtual switch, before sending it to the vnet device. Thus, assigning a PVID to a vnet implicitly means that the corresponding virtual network port on the virtual switch is marked untagged for the VLAN specified by the PVID. You can have only one PVID for a vnet device.

The corresponding virtual network interface, when configured using the `ifconfig(1M)` command without a VLAN ID and using only its device instance, results in the interface being implicitly assigned to the VLAN specified by the virtual network's PVID.

For example, if you were to plumb `vnet` instance `0`, using the following command, and if the `pvid=` argument for the `vnet` has been specified as `10`, the `vnet0` interface would be implicitly assigned to belong to the VLAN `10`.

```
# ifconfig vnet0 plumb
```

VLAN ID (VID)

The VID indicates the VLAN to which a virtual network device or virtual switch needs to be a member, in tagged mode. The virtual network device sends and receives tagged frames over the VLANs specified by its VIDs. The virtual switch passes any frames that are tagged with the specified VID between the virtual network device and the external network.

▼ Assign VLANs to a Virtual Switch and Virtual Network Device

- 1 Assign the virtual switch (`vsw`) to two VLANs, for example. Configure VLAN `21` as untagged and VLAN `20` as tagged. Assign the virtual network (`vnet`) to three VLANs, for example. Configure VLAN `20` as untagged and VLAN `21` and `22` as tagged.

```
# ldm add-vsw net-dev=e1000g0 pvid=21 vid=20 primary-vsw0 primary
# ldm add-vnet pvid=20 vid=21,22 vnet01 primary-vsw0 ldom1
```

- 2 Plumb the VLAN interfaces.

This example assumes that the instance number of these devices is `0` in the domains and the VLANs are mapped to these subnets:

VLAN	Subnet
20	192.168.1.0 (netmask: 255.255.255.0)
21	192.168.2.0 (netmask: 255.255.255.0)
22	192.168.3.0 (netmask: 255.255.255.0)

- a. Plumb the VLAN interface in the service (`primary`) domain.

```
primary# ifconfig vsw0 plumb
primary# ifconfig vsw0 192.168.2.100 netmask 0xffffffff broadcast + up
primary# ifconfig vsw20000 plumb
primary# ifconfig vsw20000 192.168.1.100 netmask 0xffffffff broadcast + up
```

b. Plumb the VLAN interface in the guest (ldom1) domain.

```
ldom1# ifconfig vnet0 plumb
ldom1# ifconfig vnet0 192.168.1.101 netmask 0xffffffff broadcast + up
ldom1# ifconfig vnet21000 plumb
ldom1# ifconfig vnet21000 192.168.2.101 netmask 0xffffffff broadcast + up
ldom1# ifconfig vnet22000 plumb
ldom1# ifconfig vnet22000 192.168.3.101 netmask 0xffffffff broadcast + up
```

For more information about how to configure VLAN interfaces in the Solaris OS, refer to [“Administering Virtual Local Area Networks”](#) in *System Administration Guide: IP Services*.

Using NIU Hybrid I/O

The virtual I/O framework implements a *hybrid* I/O model for improved functionality and performance. The hybrid I/O model combines direct and virtualized I/O to allow flexible deployment of I/O resources to virtual machines. It is particularly useful when direct I/O does not provide full capability for the virtual machine, or direct I/O is not persistently or consistently available to the virtual machine. This could be because of resource availability or virtual machine migration. The hybrid I/O architecture is well-suited to the Network Interface Unit (NIU), a network I/O interface integrated on chip, on Sun UltraSPARC T2-based platforms. This allows the dynamic assignment of Direct Memory Access (DMA) resources to virtual networking devices and, thereby, provides consistent performance to applications in the domain.

NIU hybrid I/O is available for Sun UltraSPARC T2-based platforms. This feature is enabled by an optional hybrid mode that provides for a virtual network (vnet) device where the DMA hardware resources are loaned to a vnet device in a guest domain for improved performance. In the hybrid mode, a vnet device in a guest domain can send and receive unicast traffic from an external network directly into the guest domain using the DMA hardware resources. The broadcast traffic and unicast traffic to the other guest domains in the same system continue to be sent using the virtual I/O communication mechanism.

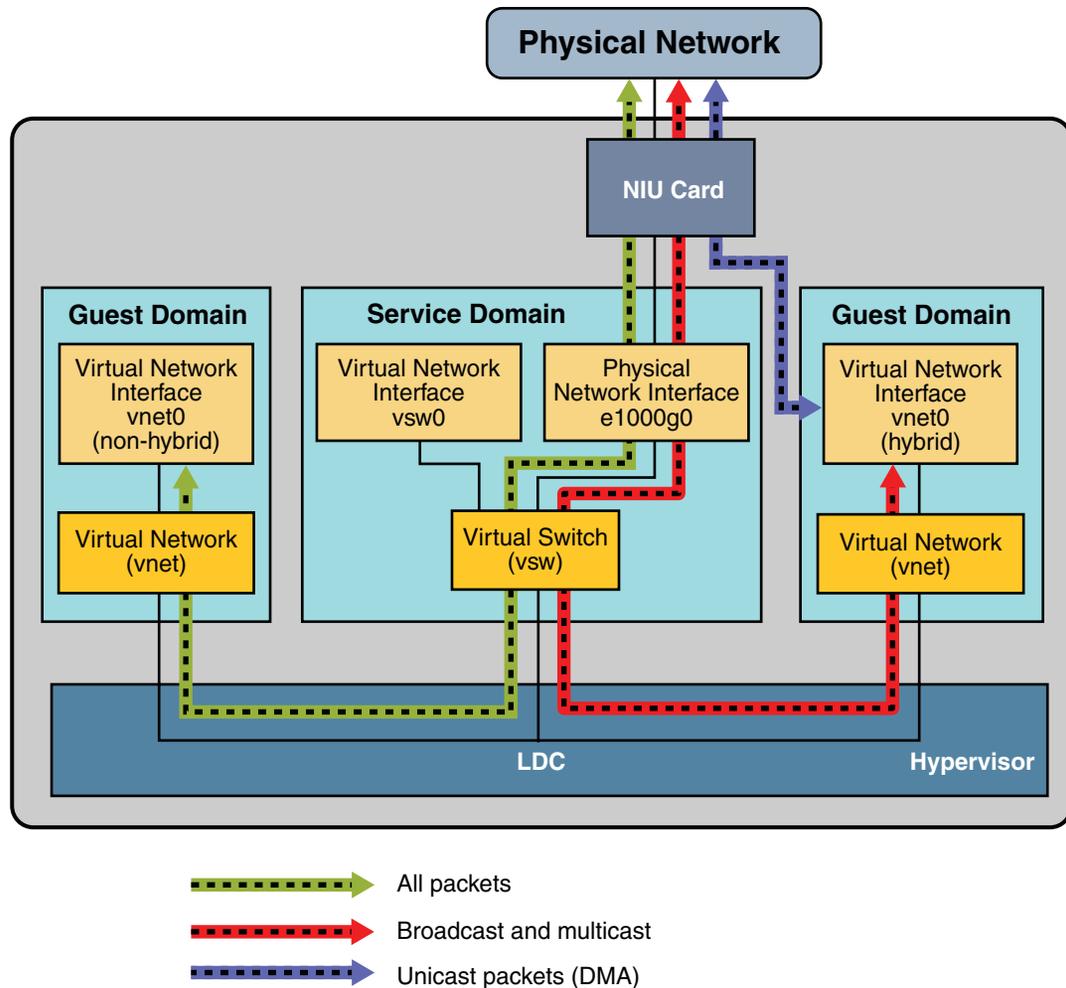


FIGURE 7-6 Hybrid Virtual Networking

The hybrid mode applies only for the vnet devices that are associated with a virtual switch (vsw) configured to use an NIU network device. As the shareable DMA hardware resources are limited, up to only three vnet devices per vsw can have DMA hardware resources assigned at a given time. If more than three vnet devices have the hybrid mode enabled, the assignment is done on a first-come, first-served basis. As there are two NIU network devices in a system, there can be a total of six vnet devices on two different virtual switches with DMA hardware resources assigned.

Following are points you need to be aware of when using this feature:

- Hybrid mode option for a vnet device is treated as a suggestion only. That means the DMA resources are assigned only when they are available and the device is capable of using them.
- Logical Domains Manager CLI commands do not validate the hybrid mode option; that is, it is possible to set the hybrid mode on any vnet or any number of vnet devices.
- Guest domains and the service domain need to run Solaris 10 10/08 OS at a minimum.
- Up to a maximum of only three vnet devices per vsw can have DMA hardware resources loaned at a given time. As there are two NIU network devices, there can be a total of six vnet devices with DMA hardware resources loaned.

Note – Set the hybrid mode only for three vnet devices per vsw so that they are guaranteed to have DMA hardware resources assigned.

- Hybrid mode is disabled by default for a vnet device. It needs to be explicitly enabled with Logical Domains Manager CLI commands. See [“Enable Hybrid Mode” on page 141](#). (Refer to the `ldm(1M)` man page for more details.)
- The hybrid mode option cannot be changed dynamically while the guest domain is active.
- The DMA hardware resources are assigned only when a vnet device is active that is plumbed in the guest domain.
- The Sun x8 Express 1/10G Ethernet Adapter (nxge) driver is used for the NIU card, but the same driver is also used for other 10-gigabit network cards. However, the NUI hybrid I/O feature is available for NIU network devices only.

▼ Configure a Virtual Switch With an NIU Network Device

- For example, do the following to configure a virtual switch with a NIU network device.

- a. For example, determine an NIU network device.

```
# grep nxge /etc/path_to_inst
"/niu@80/network@0" 0 "nxge"
"/niu@80/network@1" 1 "nxge"
```

- b. For example, configure a virtual switch.

```
# ldm add-vsw net-dev=nxge0 primary-vsw0 primary
```

▼ Enable Hybrid Mode

- For example, enable a hybrid mode for a vnet device while it is being created.

```
# ldm add-vnet mode=hybrid vnet01 primary-vsw0 ldom01
```

▼ Disable Hybrid Mode

- For example, disable hybrid mode for a vnet device.

```
# ldm set-vnet mode= vnet01 ldom01
```

Using Link Aggregation With a Virtual Switch

As of the release of the Solaris 10 10/08 OS and the Logical Domains 1.1 software, the virtual switch can be configured to use a link aggregation. A link aggregation is used as the virtual switch's network device to connect to the physical network. This configuration enables the virtual switch to leverage the features provided by the IEEE 802.3ad Link Aggregation Standard. Such features include increased bandwidth, load balancing, and failover. For information about how to configure link aggregation, see the *System Administration Guide: IP Services*.

After you create a link aggregation, you can assign it to the virtual switch. Making this assignment is similar to assigning a physical network device to a virtual switch. Use the `ldm add-vswitch` or `ldm set-vswitch` command to set the `net-dev` property.

When the link aggregation is assigned to the virtual switch, traffic to and from the physical network flows through the aggregation. Any necessary load balancing or failover is handled transparently by the underlying aggregation framework. Link aggregation is completely transparent to the virtual network (vnet) devices that are on the guest domains and that are bound to a virtual switch that uses an aggregation.

Note – You cannot group the virtual network devices (vnet and vsw) into a link aggregation.

You can plumb and use the virtual switch that is configured to use a link aggregation in the service domain. See “[Configure the Virtual Switch as the Primary Interface](#)” on page 63.

The following figure illustrates a virtual switch configured to use an aggregation, `aggr1`, over physical interfaces `e1000g0` and `e1000g1`.

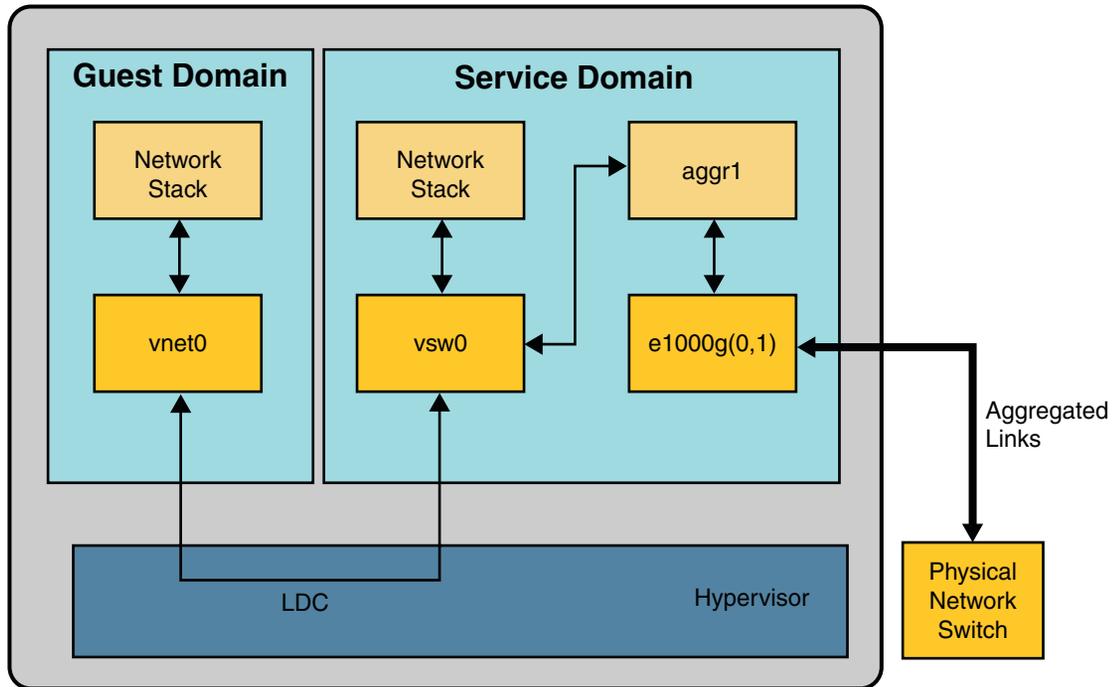


FIGURE 7-7 Configuring a Virtual Switch to Use a Link Aggregation

Configuring Jumbo Frames

The Logical Domains virtual switch (vsw) and virtual network (vnet) devices can now support Ethernet frames with payload sizes larger than 1500 bytes. This change results in these drivers being able to increase network throughput.

▼ Configure Virtual Network and Virtual Switch Devices to Use Jumbo Frames

You enable jumbo frames by specifying the maximum transmission unit (MTU) for the virtual switch device. In such cases, the virtual switch device and all virtual network devices that are bound to the virtual switch device use the specified MTU value.

In certain circumstances, you can specify an MTU value directly on a virtual network device. You might do this if the required MTU value for the virtual network device should be less than that supported by the virtual switch.

Note – On the Solaris 10 5/09 OS, the MTU of a physical device must be configured to match the MTU of the virtual switch. For more information about configuring particular drivers, see the man page that corresponds to that driver in Section 7D of the Solaris reference manual. For example, to get information about the `e1000g` driver, see the [e1000g\(7D\)](#) man page.

On the OpenSolaris™ OS, the `vsw` driver automatically configures the MTU of the physical device. Thus, you need not perform additional configuration steps.

1 Become superuser on the control domain.

2 Determine the value of MTU that you want to use for the virtual network.

You can specify an MTU value from 1500 to 16000 bytes. The specified MTU must match the MTU of the physical network device that is assigned to the virtual switch.

3 Specify the MTU value of a virtual switch device or virtual network device.

Do one of the following:

- Enable jumbo frames on a new virtual switch device in the service domain by specifying its MTU as a value of the `mtu` property.

```
# ldm add-vsw mtu=value vswitch-name ldom
```

In addition to configuring the virtual switch, this command updates the MTU value of each virtual network device that will be bound to this virtual switch.

- Enable jumbo frames on an existing virtual switch device in the service domain by specifying its MTU as a value of the `mtu` property.

```
# ldm set-vsw mtu=value vswitch-name
```

In addition to configuring the virtual switch, this command updates the MTU value of each virtual network device that will be bound to this virtual switch.

In rare circumstances, you might need to use the `ldm add-vnet` or `ldm set-vnet` command to specify an MTU value for a virtual network device that differs from the MTU value of the virtual switch. For example, you might change the virtual network device's MTU value if you configure VLANs over a virtual network device and the largest VLAN MTU is less than the MTU value on the virtual switch. A `vnet` driver that supports jumbo frames might not be required for domains where only the default MTU value is used. However, if the domains have virtual network devices bound to a virtual switch that uses jumbo frames, ensure that the `vnet` driver supports jumbo frames.

If you use the `ldm set-vnet` command to specify an `mtu` value on a virtual network device, future updates to the MTU value of the virtual switch device are not propagated to that virtual

network device. To reenable the virtual network device to obtain the MTU value from the virtual switch device, run the following command:

```
# ldm set-vnet mtu= vnet-name ldom
```

Note that enabling jumbo frames for a virtual network device automatically enables jumbo frames for any HybridIO resource that is assigned to that virtual network device.

On the control domain, the Logical Domains Manager updates the MTU values that are initiated by the `ldm set -vsw` and `ldm set -vnet` commands as delayed reconfiguration operations. To make MTU updates to domains other than the control domain, you must stop a domain prior to running the `ldm set -vsw` or `ldm set -vnet` command to modify the MTU value.

Note – You cannot use the OpenSolaris 2009.06 `dladm set -linkprop` command to change the MTU value of Logical Domains virtual network devices.

Example 7-1 Configuring Jumbo Frames on Virtual Switch and Virtual Network Devices

- The following example shows how to add a new virtual switch device that uses an MTU value of 9000. This MTU value is propagated from the virtual switch device to all of the client virtual network devices.

First, the `ldm add -vsw` command creates the virtual switch device, `primary-vsw0`, with an MTU value of 9000. Note that instance 0 of the network device `e1000g0` is specified as a value of the `net - dev` property.

```
# ldm add-vsw net-dev=e1000g0 mtu=9000 primary-vsw0 primary
```

Next, the `ldm add -vnet` command adds a client virtual network device to this virtual switch, `primary-vsw0`. Note that the MTU of the virtual network device is implicitly assigned from the virtual switch to which it is bound. As a result, the `ldm add -vnet` command does not require that you specify a value for the `mtu` property.

```
# ldm add-vnet vnet01 primary-vsw0 ldom1
```

The `ifconfig` command plumbs the virtual switch interface in the service domain, `primary`. The `ifconfig vsw0` command output shows that the value of the `mtu` property is 9000.

```
# ifconfig vsw0 plumb
# ifconfig vsw0 192.168.1.100/24 up
# ifconfig vsw0
vsw0: flags=201000843<UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST,IPv4,CoS> mtu 9000 index 5
    inet 192.168.1.100 netmask ffffffff broadcast 192.168.1.255
    ether 0:14:4f:fa:0:99
```

The `ifconfig` command plumbs the virtual network interface in the guest domain, `ldom1`. The `ifconfig vnet0` command output shows that the value of the `mtu` property is 9000.

```
# ifconfig vnet0 plumb
# ifconfig vnet0 192.168.1.101/24 up
# ifconfig vnet0
vnet0: flags=201000843<UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST,IPv4,CoS> mtu 9000 index 4
      inet 192.168.1.101 netmask fffffff0 broadcast 192.168.1.255
      ether 0:14:4f:f9:c4:13
```

- The following example shows how to use the `ifconfig` command to change the MTU of the interface to 4000.

Note that the MTU of an interface can only be changed to a value that is less than the MTU of the device that is assigned by the Logical Domains Manager. This method is useful when VLANs are configured and each VLAN interface needs a different MTU.

```
# ifconfig vnet0 mtu 4000
# ifconfig vnet0
vnet0: flags=1201000843<UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST,IPv4,CoS,FIXEDMTU>
mtu 4000 index 4
      inet 192.168.1.101 netmask fffffff0 broadcast 192.168.1.255
      ether 0:14:4f:f9:c4:13
```

Compatibility With Older (Jumbo-Unaware) Versions of the `vnet` and `vsw` Drivers

Drivers that support jumbo frames can interoperate with drivers that do not support jumbo frames on the same system. This interoperability is possible as long as jumbo frame support is not enabled when you create the virtual switch.

Note – Do not set the `mtu` property if any guest or service domains that are associated with the virtual switch do not use Logical Domains drivers that support jumbo frames.

Jumbo frames can be enabled by changing the `mtu` property of a virtual switch from the default value of 1500. In this instance, older driver versions ignore the `mtu` setting and continue to use the default value. Note that the `ldm list` output will show the MTU value you specified and not the default value. Any frames larger than the default MTU are not sent to those devices and are dropped by the new drivers. This situation might result in inconsistent network behavior with those guests that still use the older drivers. This applies to both client guest domains and the service domain.

So, while jumbo frames are enabled, ensure that all virtual devices in the Logical Domains network are upgraded to use the new drivers that support jumbo frames. Also ensure that you upgrade to Logical Domains Manager 1.2 so that you can configure jumbo frames.

Migrating Logical Domains

This chapter describes how to migrate logical domains from one host machine to another as of this release of Logical Domains 1.2 software.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- “Introduction to Logical Domain Migration” on page 147
- “Overview of a Migration Operation” on page 148
- “Software Compatibility” on page 148
- “Authentication for Migration Operations” on page 149
- “Migrating an Active Domain” on page 149
- “Migrating Bound or Inactive Domains” on page 152
- “Performing a Dry Run” on page 153
- “Monitoring a Migration in Progress” on page 153
- “Canceling a Migration in Progress” on page 154
- “Recovering From a Failed Migration” on page 155
- “Migration Examples” on page 155

Introduction to Logical Domain Migration

Logical Domain Migration provides the ability to migrate a logical domain from one host machine to another. The host where the migration is initiated is referred to as the source machine, and the host where the domain is migrated to is referred to as the target machine. Similarly, once a migration is started, the domain to be migrated is referred to as the source domain and the shell of a domain created on the target machine is referred to as the target domain while the migration is in progress.

Overview of a Migration Operation

The Logical Domains Manager on the source machine accepts the request to migrate a domain and establishes a secure network connection with the Logical Domains Manager running on the target machine. Once this connection has been established, the migration occurs. The migration itself can be broken down into different phases.

Phase 1: After connecting with the Logical Domains Manager running in the target host, information about the source machine and domain are transferred to the target host. This information is used to perform a series of checks to determine whether a migration is possible. The checks differ depending on the state of the source domain. For example, if the source domain is active, a different set of checks are performed than if the domain is bound or inactive.

Phase 2: When all checks in Phase 1 have passed, the source and target machines prepare for the migration. In the case where the source domain is active, this includes shrinking the number of CPUs to one and suspending the domain. On the target machine, a domain is created to receive the source domain.

Phase 3: For an active domain, the next phase is to transfer all the runtime state information for the domain to the target. This information is retrieved from the hypervisor. On the target, the state information is installed in the hypervisor.

Phase 4: Handoff. After all state information is transferred, the handoff occurs when the target domain resumes execution (if the source was active) and the source domain is destroyed. From this point on, the target domain is the sole version of the domain running.

Software Compatibility

For a migration to occur, both the source and target machines must be running compatible software:

- The hypervisor on both the source and target machines must have firmware that supports domain migration.

If you see the following error, you do not have the correct version of system firmware on either the source or target machine.

```
System Firmware version on <downrev machine> does not support Domain Migration
Domain Migration of LDom <source domain> failed
```

- A compatible version of the Logical Domains Manager must be running on both machines.

Note – The migration feature was first released with the Logical Domains 1.1 software and corresponding firmware. For information about the latest firmware for your platform, see the [Logical Domains 1.2 Release Notes](#).

Authentication for Migration Operations

Since the migration operation executes on two machines, a user must be authenticated on both the source and target host. In particular, the user must have the `solaris.ldoms.write` authorization on both machines.

The `ldm` command line interface for migration allows the user to specify an optional alternate user name for authentication on the target host. If this is not specified, the user name of the user executing the migration command is used. In both cases, the user is prompted for a password for the target machine.

Migrating an Active Domain

For the migration of an active domain to occur with Logical Domains 1.2 software, there is a certain set of requirements and restrictions imposed on the source logical domain, the source machine, and the target machine. The sections following describe these requirements and restrictions for each of the resource types.

Note – The migration operation speeds up when the primary domain on the source and target systems have cryptographic units assigned.

Migrating CPUs in an Active Domain

Following are the requirements and restrictions on CPUs when performing a migration.

- The source and target machines must have the same processor type running at the same frequency.
- The target machine must have sufficient free strands to accommodate the number of strands in use by the domain. In addition, full cores must be allocated for the migrated domain. If the number of strands in the source are less than a full core, the extra strands are unavailable to any domain until after the migrated domain is rebooted.
- After a migration, CPU dynamic reconfiguration (DR) is disabled for the target domain until it has been rebooted. Once a reboot has occurred, CPU DR becomes available for that domain.

- Either the source domain must have only a single strand, or the guest OS must support CPU DR, so that the domain can be shrunk to a single strand before migration. Conditions in the guest domain that would cause a CPU DR removal to fail would also cause the migration attempt to fail. For example, processes bound to CPUs within the guest domain, or processor sets configured in the source logical domain, can cause a migration operation to fail.

Migrating Memory in an Active Domain

There must be sufficient free memory on the target machine to accommodate the migration of the source domain. In addition, following are a few properties that must be maintained across the migration:

- It must be possible to create the same number of identically-sized memory blocks.
- The physical addresses of the memory blocks do not need to match, but the same real addresses must be maintained across the migration.

The target machine must have sufficient free memory to accommodate the migration of the source domain. In addition, the layout of the available memory on the target machine must be compatible with the memory layout of the source domain or the migration will fail.

In particular, if the memory on the target machine is fragmented into multiple small address ranges, but the source domain requires a single large address range, the migration will fail. The following example illustrates this scenario. The target domain has two Gbytes of free memory in two memory blocks:

```
# ldm list-devices memory
MEMORY
  PA                SIZE
  0x108000000       1G
  0x188000000       1G
```

The source domain, `ldg-src`, also has two Gbytes of free memory, but it is laid out in a single memory block:

```
# ldm list -o memory ldg-src
NAME
ldg-src

MEMORY
  RA                PA                SIZE
  0x8000000         0x208000000       2G
```

Given this memory layout situation, the migration fails:

```
# ldm migrate-domain ldg-src dt212-239
Target Password:
Unable to bind 2G memory region at real address 0x8000000
Domain Migration of LDom ldg-src failed
```

Migrating Physical I/O Devices in an Active Domain

Virtual devices that are backed by physical devices can be migrated. However, virtual devices that have direct access to physical devices cannot be migrated. For instance, you cannot migrate I/O domains.

Migrating Virtual I/O Devices in an Active Domain

All virtual I/O (VIO) services used by the source domain must be available on the target machine. In other words, the following conditions must exist:

- Each logical volume used in the source logical domain must also be available on the target host and must refer to the same storage.



Caution – If the logical volume used by the source as a boot device exists on the target but does not refer to the same storage, the migration appears to succeed, but the machine is not usable as it is unable to access its boot device. The domain has to be stopped, the configuration issue corrected, and then the domain restarted. Otherwise, the domain could be left in an inconsistent state.

- For each virtual network device in the source domain, a virtual network switch must exist on the target host, with the same name as the virtual network switch the device is attached to on the source host.

For example, if `vnet0` in the source domain is attached to a virtual switch service name `switch-y`, then there must be a logical domain on the target host providing a virtual switch service named `switch-y`.

Note – The switches do not have to be connected to the same network for the migration to occur, though the migrated domain can experience networking problems if the switches are not connected to the same network.

MAC addresses used by the source domain that are in the automatically allocated range must be available for use on the target host.

- A virtual console concentrator (vcc) service must exist on the target host and have at least one free port. Explicit console constraints are ignored during the migration. The console for the target domain is created using the target domain name as the console group and using any available port on the first vcc device in the control domain. If there is a conflict with the default group name, the migration fails.

Migrating NIU Hybrid Input/Output in an Active Domain

A domain using NIU Hybrid I/O resources can be migrated. A constraint specifying NIU Hybrid I/O resources is not a hard requirement of a logical domain. If such a domain is migrated to a machine that does not have available NIU resources, the constraint is preserved, but not fulfilled.

Migrating Cryptographic Units in an Active Domain

You cannot migrate a logical domain that has bound cryptographic units if it has more than one VCPU. Attempts to migrate such a domain will fail.

Delayed Reconfiguration in an Active Domain

Any active delayed reconfiguration operations on the source or target hosts prevent a migration from starting. Delayed reconfiguration operations are blocked while a migration is in progress.

Operations on Other Domains

While a migration is in progress on a machine, any operation which could result in the modification of the Machine Description (MD) of the domain being migrated is blocked. This includes all operations on the domain itself as well as operations such as bind and stop on other domains on the machine.

Migrating Bound or Inactive Domains

Because a bound or inactive domain is not executing at the time of the migration, there are fewer restrictions than when you migrate an active domain.

The migration of a bound domain requires that the target is able to satisfy the CPU, memory, and I/O constraints of the source domain. Otherwise, the migration will fail. The migration of an inactive domain does not have such requirements. However, the target must satisfy the domain's constraints when the binding occurred. Otherwise, the domain binding will fail.

Migrating CPUs in a Bound or Inactive Domain

You can migrate a bound or inactive domain between machines running different processor types and machines that are running at different frequencies.

The Solaris OS image in the guest must support the processor type on the target machine.

Migrating Virtual Input/Output in a Bound or Inactive Domain

For an inactive domain, there are no checks performed against the virtual input/output (VIO) constraints. So, the VIO servers do not need to exist for the migration to succeed. As with any inactive domain, the VIO servers need to exist and be available at the time the domain is bound.

Performing a Dry Run

When you provide the `-n` option to the `migrate-domain` subcommand, migration checks are performed, but the source domain is not migrated. Any requirement that is not satisfied is reported as an error. This allows you to correct any configuration errors before attempting a real migration.

Note – Because of the dynamic nature of logical domains, it is possible for a dry run to succeed and a migration to fail and vice-versa.

Monitoring a Migration in Progress

When a migration is in progress, the source and target domains are shown differently in the status output. The output of the `ldm list` command indicates the state of the migrating domain.

The sixth column in the `FLAGS` field shows one of the following values:

- The source domain shows an `s` to indicate that it is the source of the migration.
- The target domain shows a `t` to indicate that it is the target of a migration.
- If an error occurs that requires user intervention, an `e` is shown.

The following shows that `ldg-src` is the source domain of the migration:

```
# ldm list ldg-src
NAME      STATE      FLAGS  CONS  VCPU  MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
ldg-src   suspended -n---s    1     1G     0.0%  2h 7m
```

The following shows that `ldg-tgt` is the target domain of the migration:

```
# ldm list ldg-tgt
NAME      STATE    FLAGS  CONS   VCPU  MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
ldg-tgt   bound   -----t  5000   1     1G
```

In the long form of the status output, additional information is shown about the migration. On the source, the percentage of the operation complete is displayed along with the target host and domain name. Similarly, on the target, the percentage of the operation complete is displayed along with the source host and domain name.

EXAMPLE 8-1 Monitoring a Migration in Progress

```
# ldm list -o status ldg-src
NAME
ldg-src

STATUS
  OPERATION  PROGRESS  TARGET
  migration  17%      t5440-sys-2
```

Canceling a Migration in Progress

Once a migration starts, if the `ldm` command is interrupted with a KILL signal, the migration is terminated. The target domain is destroyed, and the source domain is resumed if it was active. If the controlling shell of the `ldm` command is lost, the migration continues in the background.

A migration operation can also be canceled externally by using the `ldm cancel-operation` command. This terminates the migration in progress, and the source domain resumes as the active domain. The `ldm cancel-operation` command should be initiated from the source system. On a given system, any migration-related command impacts the migration operation that was started from that system. A system cannot control a migration operation when it is the target system.

Note – Once a migration has been initiated, suspending the `ldm(1M)` process does not pause the operation, because it is the Logical Domains Manager daemon (`ldmd`) on the source and target machines that are effecting the migration. The `ldm` process waits for a signal from the `ldmd` that the migration has been completed before returning.

Recovering From a Failed Migration

If the network connection is lost after the source has completed sending all the runtime state information to the target, but before the target can acknowledge that the domain has been resumed, the migration operation terminates, and the source is placed in an error state. This indicates that user interaction is required to determine whether or not the migration was completed successfully. In such a situation, take the following steps.

- Determine whether the target domain has resumed successfully. The target domain will be in one of two states:
 - If the migration completed successfully, the target domain is in the normal state.
 - If the migration failed, the target cleans up and destroys the target domain.
- If the target is resumed, it is safe to destroy the source domain in the error state. If the target is not present, the source domain is still the master version of the domain, and it must be recovered. To do this, execute the cancel command on the source machine. This clears the error state and restores the source domain back to its original condition.

Migration Examples

[Example 8–2](#) shows how a domain, called `ldg1`, can be migrated to a machine called `t5440-sys-2`.

EXAMPLE 8-2 Migrating a Guest Domain

```
# ldm migrate-domain ldg1 t5440-sys-2
Target Password:
```

[Example 8–3](#) shows that a domain can be renamed as part of the migration. In this example, `ldg-src` is the source domain, and it is renamed to `ldg-tgt` on the target machine (`t5440-sys-2`) as part of the migration. In addition, the user name (`root`) on the target machine is explicitly specified.

EXAMPLE 8-3 Migrating and Renaming a Guest Domain

```
# ldm migrate ldg-src root@t5440-sys-2:ldg-tgt
Target Password:
```

[Example 8–4](#) shows a sample failure message if the target domain does not have migration support; that is, if you are running an LDom version prior to version 1.2.

EXAMPLE 8-4 Migration Failure Message

```
# ldm migrate ldg1 t5440-sys-2
Target Password:
Failed to establish connection with ldmd(1m) on target: t5440-sys-2
Check that the 'ldmd' service is enabled on the target machine and
that the version supports Domain Migration. Check that the 'xmpc_enabled'
and 'incoming_migration_enabled' properties of the 'ldmd' service on
the target machine are set to 'true' using svccfg(1M).
```

[Example 8-5](#) shows how to obtain status on a target domain while the migration is in progress. In this example, the source machine is t5440-sys-1.

EXAMPLE 8-5 Obtaining Target Domain Status

```
# ldm list -o status ldg-tgt
NAME
ldg-tgt

STATUS
  OPERATION    PROGRESS    SOURCE
  migration    55%         t5440-sys-1
```

[Example 8-6](#) shows how to obtain parseable status on the source domain while the migration is in progress. In this example, the target machine is t5440-sys-2.

EXAMPLE 8-6 Obtaining Source Domain Parseable Status

```
# ldm list -o status -p ldg-src
VERSION 1.3
DOMAIN|name=ldg-src|
STATUS
|op=migration|progress=42|error=no|target=t5440-sys-2
```

Other Information and Tasks

This chapter contains information and tasks about using the Logical Domains software that are not described in the preceding chapters.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- “Using CPU Power Management Software” on page 157
- “Entering Names in the CLI” on page 160
- “Listing Logical Domains Resources” on page 161
- “Connecting to a Guest Console Over a Network” on page 175
- “Stopping a Heavily-Loaded Domain Can Time Out” on page 176
- “Determining Where Errors Occur by Mapping CPU and Memory Addresses” on page 176
- “Using Console Groups” on page 179
- “Operating the Solaris OS With Logical Domains” on page 180
- “Using LDOMs With ALOM CMT” on page 183
- “Enabling and Using BSM Auditing” on page 30
- “Managing Logical Domains Configurations” on page 184
- “Configuring Domain Dependencies” on page 80

Using CPU Power Management Software

To use CPU Power Management (PM) software, you first need to set the power management policy in ILOM 3.0 firmware. This section summarizes the information that you need to be able to use power management with LDOMs software. Refer to “Monitoring Power Consumption” in the *Sun Integrated Lights Out Manager (ILOM) 3.0 CLI Procedures Guide* (<http://dlc.sun.com/pdf/820-6412-10/820-6412-10.pdf>) for more details.

The power policy is the setting that governs system power usage at any point in time. The Logical Domains Manager, version 1.2, supports two power policies, assuming that the underlying platform has implemented Power Management features:

- **Performance** – The system is allowed to use all the power that is available.
- **Elastic** – The system power usage is adapted to the current utilization level. For example, power up or down just enough system components to keep utilization within thresholds at all times, even if the workload fluctuates.

For instructions on configuring the power policy using the ILOM 3.0 firmware CLI, refer to “Monitoring Power Consumption” in the *Sun Integrated Lights Out Manager (ILOM) 3.0 CLI Procedures Guide* (<http://dlc.sun.com/pdf/820-6412-10/820-6412-10.pdf>).

Note – To achieve maximum power savings, do not run the `ldm bind-domain` command and then leave the domain in the bound state for a long period of time. When a domain is in the bound state, all of its CPUs are powered on.

Showing CPU Power-Managed Strands

This section shows how to list power-managed strands and virtual CPUs.

▼ List CPU Power-Managed Strands

- List power-managed strands by doing one of the following.

a. Use the `list -l` subcommand.

A dash (---) in the UTIL column of the CPU means the strand is power-managed.

```
# ldm list -l primary
NAME          STATE  FLAGS  CONS  VCPU  MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
primary      active -n-cv  SP    8     4G      4.3%  7d 19h 43m

SOFTSTATE
Solaris running

MAC
00:14:4f:fa:ed:88

HOSTID
0x84faed88

CONTROL
failure-policy=ignore
```

```

DEPENDENCY
  master=

VCPU
  VID    PID    UTIL  STRAND
  0      0      0.0%  100%
  1      1      ---   100%
  2      2      ---   100%
  3      3      ---   100%
  4      4      ---   100%
  5      5      ---   100%
  6      6      ---   100%
  7      7      ---   100%
  . . .

```

b. Use the parseable option (-p) to the list -l subcommand.

A blank after `util=` means the strand is power-managed.

```

# ldm list -l -p

VCPU
|vid=0|pid=0|util=0.7%|strand=100
|vid=1|pid=1|util=|strand=100
|vid=2|pid=2|util=|strand=100
|vid=3|pid=3|util=|strand=100
|vid=4|pid=4|util=0.7%|strand=100
|vid=5|pid=5|util=|strand=100
|vid=6|pid=6|util=|strand=100
|vid=7|pid=7|util=|strand=100

```

▼ List Power-Managed CPUs

● List power-managed CPUs by doing one of the following.

a. Use the `list-devices -a cpu` subcommand.

In the power management (PM) column, a yes means the CPU is power-managed and a no means the CPU is powered on. It is assumed that 100 percent free CPUs are power-managed by default, hence the dash (---) under PM.

```

# ldm list-devices -a cpu

VCPU
  PID    %FREE    PM
  0      0        no
  1      0        yes
  2      0        yes
  3      0        yes
  4      100     ---
  5      100     ---

```

```

6      100      ---
7      100      ---

```

b. Use the parseable option (-p) to the `list-devices -a cpu` subcommand.

In the power management (pm=) field, a yes means the CPU is power-managed and a no means the CPU is powered on. It is assumed that 100 percent free CPUs are power-managed by default, hence the blank in that field.

```

# ldm list-devices -a -p cpu
VERSION 1.4
VCPU
|pid=0|free=0|pm=no
|pid=1|free=0|pm=yes
|pid=2|free=0|pm=yes
|pid=3|free=0|pm=yes
|pid=4|free=0|pm=no
|pid=5|free=0|pm=yes
|pid=6|free=0|pm=yes
|pid=7|free=0|pm=yes
|pid=8|free=100|pm=
|pid=9|free=100|pm=
|pid=10|free=100|pm=

```

Entering Names in the CLI

The following sections describe the restrictions on entering names in the Logical Domains Manager CLI.

File Names (*file*) and Variable Names (*var-name*)

- First character must be a letter, a number, or a forward slash (/).
- Subsequent letters must be letters, numbers, or punctuation.

Virtual Disk Server *backend* and Virtual Switch Device Names

The names must contain letters, numbers, or punctuation.

Configuration Name (*config-name*)

The logical domain configuration name (*config-name*) that you assign to a configuration stored on the service processor (SP) must have no more than 64 characters.

All Other Names

The remainder of the names, such as the logical domain name (*ldom*), service names (*vswitch-name*, *service-name*, *vdpcs-service-name*, and *vcc-name*), virtual network name (*if-name*), and virtual disk name (*disk-name*), must be in the following format:

- First character must be a letter or number.
- Subsequent characters must be letters, numbers, or any of the following characters
-_+#. : ; ~ ().

Listing Logical Domains Resources

This section shows the syntax usage for the `ldm` subcommands, defines some output terms, such as flags and utilization statistics, and provides examples that are similar to what you actually see as output.

Machine-Readable Output

If you are creating scripts that use `ldm list` command output, *always* use the `-p` option to produce the machine-readable form of the output. See [“Generate a Parseable, Machine-Readable List \(-p\)” on page 167](#) for more information.

▼ Show Syntax Usage for `ldm` Subcommands

- Look at syntax usage for all `ldm` subcommands.

```
primary# ldm --help
```

For more information about the `ldm` subcommands, see the [`ldm\(1M\)`](#) man page.

Flag Definitions

The following flags can be shown in the output for a domain (`ldm list`). If you use the long, parseable options (`-l -p`) for the command, the flags are spelled out; for example, `flags=normal, control, vio-service`. If not, you see the letter abbreviation; for example `-n-cv-`. The list flag values are position dependent. Following are the values that can appear in each of the six columns from left to right.

Column 1

- `s` starting or stopping
- `-` placeholder

Column 2

- n normal
- t transition

Column 3

- d delayed reconfiguration
- - placeholder

Column 4

- c control domain
- - placeholder

Column 5

- v virtual I/O service domain
- - placeholder

Column 6

- s source domain in a migration
- t target domain in a migration
- e error occurred during a migration
- - placeholder

Utilization Statistic Definition

The per virtual CPU utilization statistic (UTIL) is shown on the long (-l) option of the `ldm list` command. The statistic is the percentage of time that the virtual CPU spent executing on behalf of the guest operating system. A virtual CPU is considered to be executing on behalf of the guest operating system except when it has been yielded to the hypervisor. If the guest operating system does not yield virtual CPUs to the hypervisor, the utilization of CPUs in the guest operating system will always show as 100%.

The utilization statistic reported for a logical domain is the average of the virtual CPU utilizations for the virtual CPUs in the domain. A dash (- - -) in the UTIL column means that the strand is power-managed.

Examples of Various Lists

Note – The actual output might vary slightly from what is shown here.

▼ Show Software Versions (-V)

- View the current software versions installed, and you receive a listing similar to the following.

Example 9-1 Software Versions Installed

```
primary# ldm -V

Logical Domain Manager (v 1.2)
  Hypervisor control protocol v 1.3
  Using Hypervisor MD v 0.1

System PROM:
  Hypervisor v. 1.7.0.    @(#)Hypervisor 1.7.0. 2008/11/19 10:20
  OpenBoot v. 4.30.0.   @(#)OBP 4.30.0. 2008/11/18 13:44
```

▼ Generate a Short List

- Generate a short list for all domains.

Example 9-2 Short List for All Domains

```
primary# ldm list
NAME          STATE   FLAGS  CONS  VCPU  MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
primary      active -t-cv          4     1G    0.5%  3d 21h 7m
ldg1         active -t--- 5000    8     1G    23%   2m
```

▼ Generate a Long List (-l)

- Generate a long list for all domains.

Example 9-3 Long List for All Domains

```
primary# ldm list -l
NAME          STATE   FLAGS  CONS  VCPU  MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
primary      active -t-cv          1     768M  0.0%  0s

VCPU
  VID  PID  UTIL  STRAND
   0   0   0.0%  100%

MEMORY
  RA          PA          SIZE
  0x4000000  0x4000000  768M
```

IO

DEVICE	PSEUDONYM	OPTIONS
pci@780	bus_a	
pci@7c0	bus_b	bypass=on

VCC

NAME	PORT-RANGE
vcc0	5000-5100

VSW

NAME	MAC	NET-DEV	DEVICE	MODE
vsw0	08:00:20:aa:bb:e0	e1000g0	switch@0	prog,promisc
vsw1	08:00:20:aa:bb:e1			routed

VDS

NAME	VOLUME	OPTIONS	DEVICE
vds0	myvol-a	slice	/disk/a
	myvol-b		/disk/b
	myvol-c	ro,slice,excl	/disk/c
vds1	myvol-d		/disk/d

VDPCS

NAME
vdpcs0
vdpcs1

NAME	STATE	FLAGS	CONS	VCPU	MEMORY	UTIL	UPTIME
ldg1	bound	-----	5000	1	512M		

VCPU

VID	PID	UTIL	STRAND
0	1		100%

MEMORY

RA	PA	SIZE
0x4000000	0x34000000	512M

NETWORK

NAME	SERVICE	DEVICE	MAC
mynet-b	vsw0@primary	network@0	08:00:20:ab:9a:12
mynet-a	vsw0@primary	network@1	08:00:20:ab:9a:11

DISK

NAME	VOLUME	DEVICE	SERVER
mydisk-a	myvol-a@vds0	disk@0	primary
mydisk-b	myvol-b@vds0	disk@1	primary

```

VDPCC
  NAME          SERVICE
  myvdpcc-a    vdpcs0@primary
  myvdpcc-b    vdpcs0@primary

VCONS
  NAME          SERVICE          PORT
  mygroup      vcc0@primary      5000

```

▼ Generate an Extended List (-e)

- Generate an extended list of all domains.

Example 9-4 Extended List for all Domains

```

primary# ldm list -e
NAME          STATE  FLAGS  CONS  VCPU  MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
primary      active -t-cv   1     768M  0.0%  0s

SOFTSTATE
Solaris running

MAC
  00:14:4f:fa:ed:88

HOSTID
  0x84faed88

CONTROL
  failure-policy=ignore

DEPENDENCY
  master=

VCPU
  VID  PID  UTIL  STRAND
  0    0    0.0% 100%

MEMORY
  RA          PA          SIZE
  0x4000000  0x4000000  768M

IO
  DEVICE          PSEUDONYM  OPTIONS
  pci@780        bus_a
  pci@7c0        bus_b      bypass=on

```

VLDC

NAME
primary

VCC

NAME PORT-RANGE
vcc0 5000-5100

VSW

NAME	MAC	NET-DEV	DEVICE	MODE
vsw0	08:00:20:aa:bb:e0	e1000g0	switch@0	prog,promisc
vsw1	08:00:20:aa:bb:e1			routed

VDS

NAME	VOLUME	OPTIONS	DEVICE
vds0	myvol-a	slice	/disk/a
	myvol-b		/disk/b
	myvol-c	ro,slice,excl	/disk/c
vds1	myvol-d		/disk/d

VDPCS

NAME
vdpcs0
vdpcs1

VLDC

NAME	SERVICE	DESC
hvctl	primary@primary	hvctl
vldcc0	primary@primary	ds

NAME	STATE	FLAGS	CONS	VCPU	MEMORY	UTIL	UPTIME
ldg1	bound	-----	5000	1	512M		

VCPU

VID	PID	UTIL	STRAND
0	1		100%

MEMORY

RA	PA	SIZE
0x4000000	0x34000000	512M

VLDC

NAME	SERVICE	DESC
vldcc0	primary@primary	ds

NETWORK

NAME	SERVICE	DEVICE	MAC
mynet-b	vsw0@primary	network@0	08:00:20:ab:9a:12
mynet-a	vsw0@primary	network@1	08:00:20:ab:9a:11

DISK			
NAME	VOLUME	DEVICE	SERVER
mydisk-a	myvol-a@vds0	disk@0	primary
mydisk-b	myvol-b@vds0	disk@1	primary

VDPCC	
NAME	SERVICE
myvdpcc-a	vdpcs0@primary
myvdpcc-b	vdpcs0@primary

VCONS		
NAME	SERVICE	PORT
mygroup	vcc0@primary	5000

▼ Generate a Parseable, Machine-Readable List (-p)

- Generate a parseable, machine-readable list of all domains.

Example 9-5 Machine-Readable List

```
primary# ldm list -p
VERSION 1.0
DOMAIN|name=primary|state=active|flags=-t-cv|cons=|ncpu=1|mem=805306368|util=0.0|uptime=0
DOMAIN|name=ldg1|state=bound|flags=- - - - |cons=5000|ncpu=1|mem=536870912|util=|uptime=
```

▼ Generate a Subset of a Long List (-o *format*)

- Generate output as a subset of resources by entering one or more of the following *format* options. If you specify more than one format, delimit the items by a comma with no spaces.
 - console - output contains virtual console (vcons) and virtual console concentrator (vcc) service
 - cpu - output contains virtual CPU (vcpu) and physical CPU (pcpu)
 - crypto - cryptographic unit output contains Modular Arithmetic Unit (mau) and any other LDomS-supported cryptographic unit, such as the Control Word Queue (CWQ)
 - disk - output contains virtual disk (vdisk) and virtual disk server (vds)
 - domain - output contains variables (var), host ID (hostid), domain state, flags, and software state
 - memory - output contains memory

- `network` - output contains media access control (`mac`) address , virtual network switch (`vsw`), and virtual network (`vnet`) device
- `physio` - physical input/output contains peripheral component interconnect (`pci`) and network interface unit (`niu`)
- `serial` - output contains virtual logical domain channel (`vlcdc`) service, virtual logical domain channel client (`vlcdc`), virtual data plane channel client (`vdpc`), virtual data plane channel service (`vdpcs`)
- `status` - output contains status about a domain migration in progress.

The following examples show various subsets of output that you can specify.

Example 9-6 List CPU Information for the Control Domain

```
# ldm list -o cpu primary
NAME
primary

VCPUs
  VID  PID  UTIL STRAND
  0    0   1.0% 100%
  1    1   0.6% 100%
  2    2   0.2% 100%
  3    3   0.5% 100%
```

Example 9-7 List Domain Information for a Guest Domain

```
# ldm list -o domain ldm2
NAME          STATE  FLAGS
ldm2          active -t---

SOFTSTATE
Openboot initializing

VARIABLES
  auto-boot?=false
  boot-device=/virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@0
```

Example 9-8 Lists Memory and Network Information for a Guest Domain

```
# ldm list -o network,memory ldm1
NAME
ldm1

MAC
  00:14:4f:f9:dd:ae
```

```

MEMORY
  RA          PA          SIZE
  0x6800000  0x46800000  1500M

NETWORK
NAME          SERVICE          DEVICE          MAC          MODE PVID VID
ldm1-network0 primary-vsw0@primary network@0 00:14:4f:fb:21:0f 1

```

▼ List a Variable

- List a variable (for example, `boot-device`) for a domain (for example, `ldg1`).

Example 9–9 Variable List for a Domain

```

primary# ldm list-variable boot-device ldg1
boot-device=/virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@0:a

```

▼ List Bindings

- List resources that are bound for a domain (for example, `ldg1`).

Example 9–10 Bindings List for a Domain

```

primary# ldm list-bindings ldg1
NAME          STATE  FLAGS  CONS  VCPU  MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
ldg1          bound  -----  5000  1     512M

VCPU
  VID  PID  UTIL  STRAND
  0    1    100%

MEMORY
  RA          PA          SIZE
  0x4000000  0x34000000  512M

NETWORK
NAME          SERVICE          DEVICE          MAC
mynet-b      vsw0@primary    network@0      08:00:20:ab:9a:12
  PEER
  vsw0@primary    08:00:20:aa:bb:e0
  mynet-a@ldg1    08:00:20:ab:9a:11
  mynet-c@ldg2    08:00:20:ab:9a:22
NAME          SERVICE          DEVICE          MAC
mynet-a      vsw0@primary    network@1      08:00:20:ab:9a:11
  PEER
  MAC

```

vsw0@primary		08:00:20:aa:bb:e0	
mynet-b@ldg1		08:00:20:ab:9a:12	
mynet-c@ldg2		08:00:20:ab:9a:22	
DISK			
NAME	VOLUME	DEVICE	SERVER
mydisk-a	myvol-a@vds0	disk@0	primary
mydisk-b	myvol-b@vds0	disk@1	primary
VDPCC			
NAME	SERVICE		
myvdpcc-a	vdpcs0@primary		
myvdpcc-b	vdpcs0@primary		
VCONS			
NAME	SERVICE	PORT	
mygroup	vcc0@primary	5000	

▼ List Configurations

- List logical domain configurations that have been stored on the SP.

Example 9–11 Configurations List

The `ldm list-config` command lists the logical domain configurations that are stored on the service processor. When used with the `-r` option, this command lists those configurations for which autosave files exist on the control domain.

For more information about configurations, see [“Managing Logical Domains Configurations” on page 184](#). For more examples, see the `ldm(1M)` man page.

```
primary# ldm list-config
factory-default
3guests
foo [next poweron]
primary
reconfig-primary
```

More Information Meaning of Labels

The labels to the right of the configuration name mean the following:

- `[current]` - last booted configuration, only as long as it matches the currently running configuration; that is, until you initiate a reconfiguration. After the reconfiguration, the annotation changes to `[next poweron]`.
- `[next poweron]` - configuration to be used at the next powercycle.

▼ List Devices

- List all server resources, bound and unbound.

Example 9–12 List of All Server Resources

```
primary# ldm list-devices -a
VCPU
  PID  %FREE  PM
  0     0     NO
  1     0     YES
  2     0     YES
  3     0     YES
  4    100   ---
  5    100   ---
  6    100   ---
  7    100   ---
  8    100   ---
  9    100   ---
 10    100   ---
 11    100   ---
 12    100   ---
 13    100   ---
 14    100   ---
 15    100   ---
 16    100   ---
 17    100   ---
 18    100   ---
 19    100   ---
 20    100   ---
 21    100   ---
 22    100   ---
 23    100   ---
 24    100   ---
 25    100   ---
 26    100   ---
 27    100   ---
 28    100   ---
 29    100   ---
 30    100   ---
 31    100   ---

MAU
  CPUSET                                BOUND
  (0, 1, 2, 3)                          ldg2
  (4, 5, 6, 7)
  (8, 9, 10, 11)
```

```
(12, 13, 14, 15)
(16, 17, 18, 19)
(20, 21, 22, 23)
(24, 25, 26, 27)
(28, 29, 30, 31)
```

```
MEMORY
  PA                SIZE                BOUND
  0x0                512K                _sys_
  0x80000            1536K               _sys_
  0x200000           62M                 _sys_
  0x400000           768M                primary
  0x3400000          512M                ldg1
  0x5400000          8M                 _sys_
  0x5480000          2G                 ldg2
  0xd480000          29368M
```

```
IO
  DEVICE            PSEUDONYM          BOUND  OPTIONS
  pci@780           bus_a              yes
  pci@7c0           bus_b              yes    bypass=on
```

▼ List Available Memory

- List the amount of memory available to be allocated.

```
primary# ldm list-devices mem
MEMORY
  PA                SIZE
  0x14e000000       2848M
```

▼ List Services

- List the services that are available.

Example 9-13 Services List

```
primary# ldm list-services
VDS
  NAME                VOLUME            OPTIONS            DEVICE
  primary-vds0
VCC
  NAME                PORT-RANGE
  primary-vcc0        5000-5100
VSW
  NAME                MAC                NET-DEV           DEVICE            MODE
  primary-vsw0        00:14:4f:f9:68:d0 e1000g0          switch@0          prog,promisc
```

Listing Constraints

To the Logical Domains Manager, constraints are one or more resources you want to have assigned to a particular domain. You either receive all the resources you ask to be added to a domain or you get none of them, depending upon the available resources. The `list-constraints` subcommand lists those resources you requested assigned to the domain.

▼ List Constraints for One Domain

- List constraints for one domain (for example, `ldg1`).

Example 9-14 Constraints List for One Domain

```
primary# ldm list-constraints ldg1
DOMAIN
ldg1

VCPU
  COUNT
  1

MEMORY
  SIZE
  512M

NETWORK
  NAME          SERVICE          DEVICE          MAC
  mynet-b       vsw0             network@0       08:00:20:ab:9a:12
  mynet-b       vsw0             network@0       08:00:20:ab:9a:12

DISK
  NAME          VOLUME
  mydisk-a      myvol-a@vds0
  mydisk-b      myvol-b@vds0

VDPCC
  NAME          SERVICE
  myvdpcc-a     vdpcs0@primary
  myvdpcc-b     vdpcs0@primary

VCONS
  NAME          SERVICE
  mygroup       vcc0
```

▼ List Constraints in XML Format

- List constraints in XML format for a particular domain (for example, `ldg1`).

Example 9–15 Constraints for a Domain in XML Format

```
primary# ldm list-constraints -x ldg1
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<LDM_interface version="1.0">
  <data version="2.0">
    <ldom>
      <ldom_info>
        <ldom_name>ldg1</ldom_name>
      </ldom_info>
      <cpu>
        <number>8</number>
      </cpu>
      <memory>
        <size>1G</size>
      </memory>
      <network>
        <vnet_name>vnet0</vnet_name>
        <service_name>primary-vsw0</service_name>
        <mac_address>01:14:4f:fa:0f:55</mac_address>
      </network>
      <disk>
        <vdisk_name>vdisk0</vdisk_name>
        <service_name>primary-vds0</service_name>
        <vol_name>vol0</vol_name>
      </disk>
      <var>
        <name>boot-device</name>
        <value>/virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@0:a</value>
      </var>
      <var>
        <name>nvramrc</name>
        <value>dealias vnet0
          /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/network@0</value>
      </var>
      <var>
        <name>use-nvramrc?</name>
        <value>>true</value>
      </var>
    </ldom>
  </data>
</LDM_interface>
```

▼ List Constraints in a Machine-Readable Format

- List constraints for all domains in a parseable format.

Example 9–16 Constraints for All Domains in a Machine-Readable Format

```
primary# ldm list-constraints -p
VERSION 1.0
DOMAIN|name=primary
MAC|mac-addr=00:03:ba:d8:b1:46
VCPU|count=4
MEMORY|size=805306368
IO
|dev=pci@780|alias=
|dev=pci@7c0|alias=
VDS|name=primary-vds0
|vol=disk-ldg2|opts=|dev=/ldoms/nv72-ldg2/disk
|vol=vol0|opts=|dev=/ldoms/nv72-ldg1/disk
VCC|name=primary-vcc0|port-range=5000-5100
VSW|name=primary-vsw0|mac-addr=|net-dev=e1000g0|dev=switch@0
DOMAIN|name=ldg1
VCPU|count=8
MEMORY|size=1073741824
VARIABLES
|boot-device=/virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@0:a
|nvramrc=devalias vnet0 /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/network@0
|use-nvramrc?=true
VNET|name=vnet0|dev=network@0|service=primary-vsw0|mac-addr=01:14:4f:fa:0f:55
VDISK|name=vdisk0|vol=vol0@primary-vds0
```

Connecting to a Guest Console Over a Network

You can connect to a guest console over a network if the `listen_addr` property is set to the IP address of the control domain in the `vntsd(1M)` SMF manifest. For example:

```
$ telnet host-name 5001
```

Note – Enabling network access to a console has security implications. Any user can connect to a console and for this reason it is disabled by default.

A Service Management Facility manifest is an XML file that describes a service. For more information about creating an SMF manifest, refer to the [Solaris 10 System Administrator Collection \(http://docs.sun.com/app/docs/coll/47.16\)](http://docs.sun.com/app/docs/coll/47.16).

Note – To access a non-English OS in a guest domain through the console, the terminal for the console must be in the locale required by the OS.

Stopping a Heavily-Loaded Domain Can Time Out

An `ldm stop-domain` command can time out before the domain completes shutting down. When this happens, an error similar to the following is returned by the Logical Domains Manager.

```
LDom ldg8 stop notification failed
```

However, the domain could still be processing the shutdown request. Use the `ldm list-domain` command to verify the status of the domain. For example:

```
# ldm list-domain ldg8
NAME          STATE  FLAGS  CONS  VCPU MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
ldg8          active s---- 5000   22  3328M  0.3% 1d 14h 31m
```

The preceding list shows the domain as active, but the `s` flag indicates that the domain is in the process of stopping. This should be a transitory state.

The following example shows the domain has now stopped.

```
# ldm list-domain ldg8
NAME          STATE  FLAGS  CONS  VCPU MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
ldg8          bound  ----- 5000   22  3328M
```

Determining Where Errors Occur by Mapping CPU and Memory Addresses

This section describes how you can correlate the information that is reported by the Solaris Fault Management Architecture (FMA) with the logical domain resources that are marked as being faulty.

FMA reports CPU errors in terms of physical CPU numbers and memory errors in terms of physical memory addresses.

If you want to determine within which logical domain an error occurred and the corresponding virtual CPU number or real memory address within the domain, then you must perform a mapping.

CPU Mapping

The domain and the virtual CPU number within the domain, which correspond to a given physical CPU number, can be determined with the following procedures.

▼ Determine the CPU Number

- 1 Generate a long parseable list for all domains.

```
primary# ldm list -l -p
```

- 2 Look for the entry in the list's VCPU sections that has a `pid` field equal to the physical CPU number.

- If you find such an entry, the CPU is in the domain the entry is listed under, and the virtual CPU number within the domain is given by the entry's `vid` field.
- If you do not find such an entry, the CPU is not in any domain.

Memory Mapping

The domain and the real memory address within the domain, which correspond to a given physical memory address (PA), can be determined as follows.

▼ Determine the Real Memory Address

- 1 Generate a long parseable list for all domains.

```
primary# ldm list -l -p
```

- 2 Look for the line in the list's MEMORY sections where the PA falls within the inclusive range pa to $(pa + size - 1)$; that is, $pa \leq PA < (pa + size - 1)$.

Here pa and $size$ refer to the values in the corresponding fields of the line.

- If you find such an entry, the PA is in the domain the entry is listed under and the corresponding real address within the domain is given by $ra + (PA - pa)$.
- If you do not find such an entry, the PA is not in any domain.

Examples of CPU and Memory Mapping

Suppose you have a logical domain configuration as shown in [Example 9–17](#), and you want to determine the domain and the virtual CPU corresponding to physical CPU number 5, and the domain and the real address corresponding to physical address `0x7e816000`.

Looking through the VCPU entries in the list for the one with the pid field equal to 5, you can find the following entry under logical domain ldg1.

```
|vid=1|pid=5|util=29|strand=100
```

Hence, the physical CPU number 5 is in domain ldg1 and within the domain it has virtual CPU number 1.

Looking through the MEMORY entries in the list, you can find the following entry under domain ldg2.

```
ra=0x8000000|pa=0x78000000|size=1073741824
```

Where $0x78000000 \leq 0x7e816000 \leq (0x78000000 + 1073741824 - 1)$; that is, $pa \leq PA \leq (pa + size - 1)$. Hence, the PA is in domain ldg2 and the corresponding real address is $0x8000000 + (0x7e816000 - 0x78000000) = 0xe816000$.

EXAMPLE 9-17 Long Parseable List of Logical Domains Configurations

```
primary# ldm list -l -p
VERSION 1.0
DOMAIN|name=primary|state=active|flags=normal,control,vio-service|cons=SP|ncpu=4|mem=1073741824|util=0.6|
uptime=64801|softstate=Solaris running
VCPU
|vid=0|pid=0|util=0.9|strand=100
|vid=1|pid=1|util=0.5|strand=100
|vid=2|pid=2|util=0.6|strand=100
|vid=3|pid=3|util=0.6|strand=100
MEMORY
|ra=0x8000000|pa=0x80000000|size=1073741824
IO
|dev=pci@780|alias=bus_a
|dev=pci@7c0|alias=bus_b
VDS|name=primary-vds0|nclients=2
|vol=disk-ldg1|opts=|dev=/opt/ldoms/testdisk.1
|vol=disk-ldg2|opts=|dev=/opt/ldoms/testdisk.2
VCC|name=primary-vcc0|nclients=2|port-range=5000-5100
VSW|name=primary-vsw0|nclients=2|mac-addr=00:14:4f:fb:42:5c|net-dev=e1000g0|dev=switch@0|mode=prog,promisc
VCONS|type=SP
DOMAIN|name=ldg1|state=active|flags=normal|cons=5000|ncpu=2|mem=805306368|util=29|uptime=903|
softstate=Solaris running
VCPU
|vid=0|pid=4|util=29|strand=100
|vid=1|pid=5|util=29|strand=100
MEMORY
|ra=0x8000000|pa=0x48000000|size=805306368
VARIABLES
|auto-boot?=true
```

EXAMPLE 9-17 Long Parseable List of Logical Domains Configurations (Continued)

```
|boot-device=/virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@0
VNET|name=net|dev=network@0|service=primary-vsw0@primary|mac-addr=00:14:4f:f9:8f:e6
VDISK|name=vdisk-1|vol=disk-ldg1@primary-vds0|dev=disk@0|server=primary
VCONS|group=group1|service=primary-vcc0@primary|port=5000
DOMAIN|name=ldg2|state=active|flags=normal|cons=5001|ncpu=3|mem=1073741824|util=35|uptime=775|
softstate=Solaris running
VCPU
|vid=0|pid=6|util=35|strand=100
|vid=1|pid=7|util=34|strand=100
|vid=2|pid=8|util=35|strand=100
MEMORY
|ra=0x8000000|pa=0x78000000|size=1073741824
VARIABLES
|auto-boot?=true
|boot-device=/virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@0
VNET|name=net|dev=network@0|service=primary-vsw0@primary|mac-addr=00:14:4f:f9:8f:e7
VDISK|name=vdisk-2|vol=disk-ldg2@primary-vds0|dev=disk@0|server=primary
VCONS|group=group2|service=primary-vcc0@primary|port=5000
```

Using Console Groups

The virtual network terminal server daemon, `vntsd(1M)`, enables you to provide access for multiple domain consoles using a single TCP port. At the time of domain creation, the Logical Domains Manager assigns a unique TCP port to each console by creating a new default group for that domain's console. The TCP port is then assigned to the console group as opposed to the console itself. The console can be bound to an existing group using the `set -vcons` subcommand.

▼ Combine Multiple Consoles Into One Group

1 Bind the consoles for the domains into one group.

The following example shows binding the console for three different domains (`ldg1`, `ldg2`, and `ldg3`) to the same console group (`group1`).

```
primary# ldm set-vcons group=group1 service=primary-vcc0 ldg1
primary# ldm set-vcons group=group1 service=primary-vcc0 ldg2
primary# ldm set-vcons group=group1 service=primary-vcc0 ldg3
```

2 Connect to the associated TCP port (localhost at port 5000 in this example).

```
# telnet localhost 5000
primary-vnts-group1: h, l, c{id}, n{name}, q:
```

You are prompted to select one of the domain consoles.

3 List the domains within the group by selecting `l` (list).

```
primary-vnts-group1: h, l, c{id}, n{name}, q: l
DOMAIN ID          DOMAIN NAME          DOMAIN STATE
0                  ldg1                 online
1                  ldg2                 online
2                  ldg3                 online
```

Note – To re-assign the console to a different group or vcc instance, the domain must be unbound; that is, it has to be in the inactive state. Refer to the Solaris 10 OS [vntsd\(1M\)](#) man page for more information on configuring and using SMF to manage `vntsd` and using console groups.

Operating the Solaris OS With Logical Domains

This section describes the changes in behavior in using the Solaris OS that occur once a configuration created by the Logical Domains Manager is instantiated; that is, domaining is enabled.

Note – Any discussion about whether domaining is enabled pertains only to Sun UltraSPARC T1-based platforms. Otherwise, domaining is always enabled.

OpenBoot Firmware Not Available After Solaris OS Has Started If Domaining Is Enabled

Domaining is enabled once a logical domains configuration created by the Logical Domains Manager is instantiated. If domaining is enabled, the OpenBoot firmware is not available after the Solaris OS has started, because it is removed from memory.

To reach the `ok` prompt from the Solaris OS, you must halt the domain. You can use the Solaris OS `halt` command to halt the domain.

Powercycling a Server

Whenever performing any maintenance on a system running LDoms software that requires powercycling the server, you must save your current logical domain configurations to the SP first.

▼ Save Your Current Logical Domain Configurations to the SP

- Use the following command.

```
# ldm add-config config-name
```

Do Not Use the `psradm(1M)` Command on Active CPUs in a Power-Managed Domain

Do not attempt to change an active CPU's operational status in a power-managed domain by using the `psradm(1M)` command. This only applies if your platform supports power management.

Result of Solaris OS Breaks

If domaining is not enabled, the Solaris OS normally goes to the OpenBoot prompt after a break is issued. The behavior described in this section is seen in two situations:

1. You press the L1-A key sequence when the input device is set to keyboard.
2. You enter the send break command when the virtual console is at the `telnet` prompt.

If domaining is enabled, you receive the following prompt after these types of breaks.

```
c)ontinue, s)ync, r)eset, h)alt?
```

Type the letter that represents what you want the system to do after these types of breaks.

Results From Halting or Rebooting the Control Domain

The following table shows the expected behavior of halting or rebooting the control (primary) domain.

Note – The question in [Table 9–1](#) regarding whether domaining is enabled pertains only to the Sun UltraSPARC T1 processors. Otherwise, domaining is always enabled.

TABLE 9-1 Expected Behavior of Halting or Rebooting the Control (primary) Domain

Command	Domaining Enabled?	Other Domain Configured?	Behavior
halt	Disabled	N/A	For Sun UltraSPARC T1 Processors: Drops to the ok prompt.
	Enabled	Not Configured	For Sun UltraSPARC T1 Processors: System either resets and goes to the OpenBoot ok prompt or goes to the following prompt: r)eset, o)k prompt, or h)alt? For Sun UltraSPARC T2 Processors: Host powered off and stays off until powered on at the SP.
	Enabled	Configured	Soft resets and boots up if the variable <code>auto-boot?=true</code> . Soft resets and halts at ok prompt if the variable <code>auto-boot?=false</code> .
reboot	Disabled	N/A	For Sun UltraSPARC T1 Processors: Powers off and powers on the host.
	Enabled	Not Configured	For Sun UltraSPARC T1 Processors: Powers off and powers on the host. For Sun UltraSPARC T2 Processors: Reboots the host, no power off.
	Enabled	Configured	For Sun UltraSPARC T1 Processors: Powers off and powers on the host. For Sun UltraSPARC T2 Processors: Reboots the host, no power off.
shutdown -i 5	Disabled	N/A	For Sun UltraSPARC T1 Processors: Powers off the host.
	Enabled	Not Configured	Host powered off, stays off until powered on at the SP.
	Enabled	Configured	Soft resets and reboots.

Using LDOMs With ALOM CMT

The section describes information to be aware of in using Advanced Lights Out Manager (ALOM) chip multithreading (CMT) with the Logical Domains Manager. For more information about using the ALOM CMT software, refer to the *Advanced Lights Out Management (ALOM) CMT v1.3 Guide* (<http://dlc.sun.com/pdf/819-7981-11/819-7981-11.pdf>).



Caution – The ALOM CMT documentation only refers to one domain, the primary domain. So, you must be aware that the Logical Domains environment is introducing multiple domains. Say you have a primary domain that is being used as a service domain to provide virtual device services to other domains. In this case, if the primary domain is restarted, these client domains appear to freeze during the reboot process. After the primary domain has fully restarted, the domains resume normal operation. You only need to shut down all domains when power is going to be removed from the entire server.

An additional option is available to the existing ALOM CMT command.

```
bootmode [normal|reset_nvram|bootscript=strong|config="config-name"]
```

The `config="config-name"` option enables you to set the configuration on the next power on to another configuration, including the factory-default shipping configuration.

You can invoke the command whether the host is powered on or off. It takes effect on the next host reset or power on.

▼ Reset the Logical Domain Configuration to the Default or Another Configuration

- Reset the logical domain configuration on the next power on to the default shipping configuration by executing this command in ALOM CMT software.

```
sc> bootmode config="factory-default"
```

You also can select other configurations that have been created with the Logical Domains Manager using the `ldm add-config` command and stored on the service processor (SP). The name you specify in the Logical Domains Manager `ldm add-config` command can be used to select that configuration with the ALOM CMT `bootmode` command. For example, assume you stored the configuration with the name `ldm-config1`.

```
sc> bootmode config="ldm-config1"
```

Now, you must powercycle the system to load the new configuration.

Refer to the `ldm(1M)` man page for more information about the `ldm add-config` command.

Managing Logical Domains Configurations

A Logical Domains *configuration* is a complete description of all the domains and their resource allocations within a single system. You can save and store configurations on the service processor (SP) for later use.

When you power up a system, the SP boots the selected configuration. By booting a configuration, the system runs the same set of domains, and uses the same virtualization and partitioning resource allocations that are specified in the configuration. The default configuration is the one that is most recently saved.

Starting with the Logical Domains 1.2 release, a copy of the current configuration is automatically saved on the control domain whenever the Logical Domains configuration is changed.

The autosave operation occurs immediately, even in the following situations:

- When the new configuration is not explicitly saved on the SP
- When the actual configuration change is not made until after the affected domain reboots

This autosave operation enables you to recover a configuration when the configurations that are saved on the SP are lost. This operation also enables you to recover a configuration when the current configuration was not explicitly saved to the SP when the system powercycled. In these circumstances, the Logical Domains Manager can restore that configuration on restart if it is newer than the configuration marked for the next boot.

Note – Power management, FMA, ASR, and PRI update events do not cause an update to the autosave files.

You can automatically or manually restore autosave files to new or existing configurations. By default, when an autosave configuration is newer than the corresponding running configuration, a message is written to the LDoms log. Thus, you must use the `ldm add-spcnfig -r` command to manually update an existing configuration or create a new one based on the autosave data.

Note – When a delayed reconfiguration is pending, the configuration changes are immediately autosaved. As a result, if you run the `ldm list-config -r` command, the autosave configuration is shown as being newer than the current configuration.

For information about how to use the `ldm *-spcnfig` commands to manage configurations and to manually recover autosave files, see the `ldm(1M)` man page.

For information about how to use an ALOM CMT Version 1.3 command to select a configuration to boot, see [“Using LDOMs With ALOM CMT” on page 183](#)).

▼ Modify the Autorecovery Policy

The autorecovery policy specifies how to handle the recovery of a configuration when one configuration that is automatically saved on the control domain is newer than the corresponding running configuration. The autorecovery policy is specified by setting the `autorecovery_policy` property of the `ldmd` SMF service. The `autorecovery_policy` property can have the following values:

- `autorecovery_policy=1` – Logs warning messages when an autosave configuration is newer than the corresponding running configuration. These messages are logged in the `ldmd` SMF log file. The user must manually perform any configuration recovery. This is the default policy.
- `autorecovery_policy=2` – Displays a notification message if an autosave configuration is newer than the corresponding running configuration. This notification message is printed in the output of any `ldm` command the first time an `ldm` command is issued after each restart of the Logical Domains Manager. The user must manually perform any configuration recovery.
- `autorecovery_policy=3` – Automatically updates the configuration if an autosave configuration is newer than the corresponding running configuration. This action overwrites the SP configuration that will be used during the next powercycle. This configuration is updated with the newer configuration that is saved on the control domain. This action does not impact the currently running configuration. It only impacts the configuration that will be used during the next powercycle. A message is also logged, which states that a newer configuration has been saved on the SP and that it will be booted the next time the system is powercycled. These messages are logged in the `ldmd` SMF log file.

1 Become superuser on the control domain.

2 View the `autorecovery_policy` property value.

```
# svccfg -s ldmd listprop ldmd/autorecovery_policy
```

3 Stop the `ldmd` service.

```
# svcadm disable ldmd
```

4 Change the `autorecovery_policy` property value.

```
# svccfg -s ldmd setprop ldmd/autorecovery_policy=value
```

For example, to set the policy to perform autorecovery, set the property value to 3:

```
# svccfg -s ldmd setprop ldmd/autorecovery_policy=3
```

5 Refresh and restart the `ldmd` service.

```
# svcadm refresh ldmd
# svcadm enable ldmd
```

Example 9-18 Modifying the Autorecovery Policy From Log to Autorecovery

The following example shows how to view the current value of the `autorecovery_policy` property and change it to a new value. The original value of this property is 1, which means that autosave changes are logged. The `svcadm` command is used to stop and restart the `ldmd` service, and the `svccfg` command is used to view and set the property value.

```
# svccfg -s ldmd listprop ldmd/autorecovery_policy
ldmd/autorecovery_policy integer 1
# svcadm disable ldmd
# svccfg -s ldmd setprop ldmd/autorecovery_policy=3
# svcadm refresh ldmd
# svcadm enable ldmd
```

Using the XML Interface With the Logical Domains Manager

This chapter explains the Extensible Markup Language (XML) communication mechanism through which external user programs can interface with Logical Domains software. These basic topics are covered:

- “XML Transport” on page 187
- “XML Protocol” on page 188
- “Event Messages” on page 193
- “Logical Domains Manager Actions” on page 197
- “Logical Domains Manager Resources and Properties” on page 198

For various schemas to use with the Logical Domains Manager, see [Appendix A, “XML Schemas.”](#)

XML Transport

External programs can use the Extensible Messaging and Presence Protocol (XMPP – RFC 3920) to communicate with the Logical Domains Manager. XMPP is supported for both local and remote connections and is on by default. To shut off a remote connection, set the `ldmd/xmpp_enable` SMF property to `false` and restart the Logical Domains Manager.

```
# svcadm disable ldmd
# svccfg -s ldmd/ldmd setprop ldmd/xmpp_enabled=false
# svcadm refresh ldmd
# svcadm enable ldmd
```

XMPP Server

The Logical Domains Manager implements an XMPP server which can communicate with numerous available XMPP client applications and libraries. The LDoms Manager uses the following security mechanisms:

- Transport Layer Security (TLS) to secure the communication channel between the client and itself.
- Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL) for authentication. PLAIN is the only SASL mechanism supported. You must send in a user name and password to the server, so it can authorize you before allowing monitoring or management operations.

Local Connections

The LDoms Manager detects whether user clients are running on the same domain as itself and, if so, does a minimal XMPP handshake with that client. Specifically, the SASL authentication step after the setup of a secure channel through TLS is skipped. Authentication and authorization are done based on the credentials of the process implementing the client interface.

Clients can choose to implement a full XMPP client or to simply run a streaming XML parser, such as the `libxml2` Simple API for XML (SAX) parser. Either way the client has to handle an XMPP handshake to the point of TLS negotiation. Refer to the XMPP specification for the sequence needed.

XML Protocol

After communication initialization is complete, LDoms-defined XML messages are sent next. There are two general types of XML messages:

- Request and response messages use the `<LDM_interface>` tag. This type of XML message is used for communicating commands and getting results back from the LDoms Manager, analogous to executing commands using the command-line interface (CLI). This tag is also used for event registration and unregistration.
- Event messages use the `<LDM_event>` tag. This type of XML message is used to asynchronously report events posted by the LDoms Manager.

Request and Response Messages

The XML interface into LDOMs has two different formats:

- One format for sending commands into the LDOMs Manager
- Another format for LDOMs Manager to respond on the status of the incoming message and the actions requested within that message.

The two formats share many common XML structures, but are separated in this discussion for a better understanding of the differences between them. This document also contains an XML Schema which details the combined incoming and outgoing XML (See “[LDM_Event XML Schema](#)” on page 213).

Request Messages

An incoming XML request to the LDOMs Manager at its most basic level includes a description of a single command, operating on a single object. More complicated requests can handle multiple commands and multiple objects per command. Following is the structure of a basic XML command.

EXAMPLE 10-1 Format of a Single Command Operating on a Single Object

```
<LDM_interface version="1.0">
  <cmd>
    <action>Place command here</action>
    <option>Place options for certain commands here</option>
    <data version="3.0">
      <Envelope>
        <References/>
        <!-- Note a <Section> section can be here instead of <Content> -->
        <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="Domain name">
          <Section xsi:type="ovf:ResourceAllocationSection_type">
            <Item>
              <rasd:OtherResourceType>LDM Resource Type</rasd:OtherResourceType>
              <gprop:GenericProperty
                key="Property name">Property Value</gprop:GenericProperty>
            </Item>
          </Section>
          <!-- Note: More Sections sections can be placed here -->
        </Content>
      </Envelope>
    </data>
    <!-- Note: More Data sections can be placed here -->
  </cmd>
  <!-- Note: More Commands sections can be placed here -->
</LDM_interface>
```

The <LDM_interface> Tag

All commands sent to the LDOMs Manager must start with the <LDM_interface> tag. Any document sent into the LDOMs Manager must have only one <LDM_interface> tag contained within it. The <LDM_interface> tag must include a version attribute as shown in [Example 10-1](#).

The <cmd> Tag

Within the <LDM_interface> tag, the document must include at least one <cmd> tag. Each <cmd> section must have only one <action> tag. Use the <action> tag to describe the command to run. Each <cmd> tag must include at least one <data> tag to describe the objects on which the command is to operate.

The <cmd> tag can also have an <option> tag, which is used for options and flags that are associated with some commands. The following commands use options:

- The `remove-domain` command can use the `-a` option.
- The `stop-domain` command can use the `-f` option.
- The `cancel-operation` command can use the `migration` or `reconf` option.

The <data> Tag

Each <data> section contains a description of an object pertinent to the command specified. The format of the data section is based on the XML schema portion of the Open Virtualization Format (OVF) draft specification. That schema defines an <Envelope> section which contains a <References> tag (unused by LDOMs) and <Content> and <Section> sections.

For LDOMs, the <Content> section is used to identify and describe a particular domain. The domain name in the `id=` attribute of the <Content> node identifies the domain. Within the <Content> section are one or more <Section> sections describing resources of the domain as needed by the particular command.

If you only need to identify a domain name, then you do not need to use any <Section> tags. Conversely, if no domain identifier is needed for the command, then you do need to provide a <Section> section, describing the resources needed for the command, outside of a <Content> section, but still within the <Envelope> section.

A <data> section does not need to contain an <Envelope> tag in cases where the object information can be inferred. This situation mainly applies to requests for monitoring all objects applicable to an action, and event registration and unregistration requests.

To allow use of the OVF specification's schema to properly define all types of objects, two additional OVF types have been defined:

- <gprop:GenericProperty> tag (See “[The GenericProperty XML Schema](#)” on page 234.)
- <Binding> tag (See “[Binding_Type XML Schema](#)” on page 234.)

The `<gprop:GenericProperty>` tag was defined to handle any object's property for which the OVF specification does not have a definition. The property name is defined in the `key=` attribute of the node and the value of the property is the contents of the node. The `<binding>` tag is used in the `list-bindings` subcommand output to define resources that are bound to other resources.

Response Messages

An outgoing XML response closely matches the structure of the incoming request in terms of the commands and objects included, with the addition of a `<Response>` section for each object and command specified, as well as an overall `<Response>` section for the request. The `<Response>` sections provide status and message information as described in [Example 10-2](#). Following is the structure of a response to a basic XML request.

EXAMPLE 10-2 Format of a Response to a Single Command Operating on a Single Object

```
<LDM_interface version="1.0">
  <cmd>
    <action>Place command here</action>
    <data version="3.0">
      <Envelope>
        <References/>
        <!-- Note a <Section> section can be here instead of <Content> -->
        <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="Domain name">
          <Section xsi:type="ovf:ResourceAllocationSection_type">
            <Item>
              <rasd:OtherResourceType>
                LDom Resource Type
              </rasd:OtherResourceType>
              <gprop:GenericProperty
                key="Property name">
                Property Value
              </gprop:GenericProperty>
            </Item>
          </Section>
          <!-- Note: More <Section> sections can be placed here -->
        </Content>
      </Envelope>
      <response>
        <status>success or failure</status>
        <resp_msg>Reason for failure</resp_msg>
      </response>
    </data>
    <!-- Note: More Data sections can be placed here -->
  </response>
  <status>success or failure</status>
  <resp_msg>Reason for failure</resp_msg>
```

EXAMPLE 10-2 Format of a Response to a Single Command Operating on a Single Object *(Continued)*

```
</response>
</cmd>
<!-- Note: More Command sections can be placed here -->
<response>
  <status>success or failure</status>
  <resp_msg>Reason for failure</resp_msg>
</response>
</LDM_interface>
```

Overall Response

This `<response>` section, which is the direct child of the `<LDM_interface>` section, indicates overall success or failure of the entire request. Unless the incoming XML document is malformed, the `<response>` section includes only a `<status>` tag. If this response status indicates success, all commands on all objects have succeeded. If this response status is a failure and there is no `<resp_msg>` tag, then one of the commands included in the original request failed. The `<resp_msg>` tag is used only to describe some problem with the XML document itself.

Command Response

The `<response>` section under the `<cmd>` section alerts the user to success or failure of that particular command. The `<status>` tag shows if that command succeeds or fails. As with the overall response, if the command fails, the `<response>` section includes only a `<resp_msg>` tag if the contents of the `<cmd>` section of the request is malformed. Otherwise, the failed status means one of the objects the command ran against caused a failure.

Object Response

Finally, each `<data>` section in a `<cmd>` section also has a `<response>` section. This shows if the command being run on this particular object passes or fails. If the status of the response is SUCCESS, there is no `<resp_msg>` tag in the `<response>` section. If the status is FAILURE, there are one or more `<resp_msg>` tags in the `<response>` field, depending on the errors encountered when running the command against that object. Object errors can result from problems found when running the command, or a malformed or unknown object.

In addition to the <response> section, the <data> section can contain other information. This information is in the same format as an incoming <data> field, describing the object that caused a failure. See [“The <data> Tag” on page 190](#). This additional information is especially useful in the following cases:

- When a command fails against a particular <data> section but passes for any additional <data> sections
- When an empty <data> section is passed into a command and fails for some domains but passes for others

Event Messages

In lieu of polling, you can subscribe to receive event notifications of certain state changes that occur. There are three types of events to which you can subscribe, individually or collectively. See [“Event Types” on page 195](#) for complete details.

Registration and Unregistration

Use an <LDM_interface> message to register for events. See [“The <LDM_interface> Tag” on page 190](#). The action tag details the type of event for which to register or unregister and the <data> section is left empty.

EXAMPLE 10-3 Example Event Registration Request Message

```
<LDM_interface version="1.0">
  <cmd>
    <action>reg-domain-events</action>
    <data version="3.0"/>
  </cmd>
</LDM_interface>
```

The Logical Domains Manager responds with an <LDM_interface> response message stating whether the registration or unregistration was successful.

EXAMPLE 10-4 Example Event Registration Response Message

```
<LDM_interface version="1.0">
  <cmd>
    <action>reg-domain-events</action>
    <data version="3.0"/>
    <response>
      <status>success</status>
    </response>
```

EXAMPLE 10-4 Example Event Registration Response Message (Continued)

```

    </data>
  </response>
  <status>success</status>
</response>
</cmd>
<response>
  <status>success</status>
</response>
</LDM_interface>

```

The action string for each type of event is listed in the events subsection.

The <LDM_event> Messages

Event messages have the same format as an incoming <LDM_interface> message with the exception that the start tag for the message is <LDM_event>. The action tag of the message is the action that was performed to trigger the event. The data section of the message describes the object associated with the event; the details depend on the type of event that occurred.

EXAMPLE 10-5 Example <LDM_event> Notification

```

<LDM_event version='1.0'>
  <cmd>
    <action>Event command here</action>
    <data version='3.0'>
      <Envelope>
        <References/>
        <Content xsi:type='ovf:VirtualSystem_Type' ovf:id='ldg1'/>
          <Section xsi:type="ovf:ResourceAllocationSection_type">
            <Item>
              <rasd:OtherResourceType>LDM Resource Type</rasd:OtherResourceType>
              <gprop:GenericProperty
                key="Property name">Property Value</gprop:GenericProperty>
            </Item>
          </Section>
        </Envelope>
      </data>
    </cmd>
  </LDM_event>

```

Event Types

Following are the event types to which you can subscribe:

- Domain events
- Hardware events
- Progress events
- Resource events

All the events correspond to Logical Domains Manager (ldm) subcommands.

Domain Events

Domain events describe what actions can be performed directly to a domain. The following table shows the domain events which can be listed in the <action> tag in the <LDM_event> message.

Domain Events	Domain Events	Domain Events
add-domain	remove-domain	bind-domain
unbind-domain	start-domain	stop-domain
domain-reset	panic-domain	migrate-domain

These events always contain *only* a <Content> tag in the OVF data section that describes to which domain the event happened. To register for the domain events, send an <LDM_interface> message with the <action> tag set to **reg-domain-events**. Unregistering for these events requires an <LDM_interface> message with the action tag set to **unreg-domain-events**.

Hardware Events

Hardware events pertain to changing the physical system hardware. In the case of LDOMs software, the only hardware changes that can be made are those to the service processor (SP) when a user adds, removes, or sets an SP configuration. Currently, the only three events of this type are:

- add-spconfig
- set-spconfig
- remove-spconfig

The hardware events always contain *only* a <Section> tag in the OVF data section which describes which SP configuration to which the event is happening. To register for these events, send an <LDM_interface> message with the <action> tag set to **reg-hardware-events**. Unregistering for these events requires an <LDM_interface> message with the <action> tag set to **unreg-hardware-events**.

Progress Events

Progress events are issued for long-running commands, such as a domain migration. These events report the amount of progress that has been made during the life of the command. At this time, only the `migration-process` event is reported.

Progress events always contain *only* a `<Section>` tag in the OVF data section that describes the SP configuration affected by the event. To register for these events, send an `<LDM_interface>` message with the `<action>` tag set to `reg-hardware-events`. Unregistering for these events requires an `<LDM_interface>` message with the `<action>` tag set to `unreg-hardware-events`.

The `<data>` section of a progress event consists of a `<content>` section that describes the affected domain. This `<content>` section uses an `ldom_info` `<Section>` tag to update progress. The following generic properties are shown in the `ldom_info` section:

- `--progress` – Percentage of the progress made by the command
- `--status` – Command status, which can be one of `ongoing`, `failed`, or `done`
- `--source` – Machine that is reporting the progress

Resource Events

Resource events occur when resources are added, removed, or changed in any domain. The data section for some of these events contains the `<Content>` tag with a `<Section>` tag giving a service name in the OVF data section. The following table shows events which can be listed in the `<action>` tag in the `<LDM_event>` message.

Resource Events	Resource Events
<code>add-vdiskserverdevice</code>	<code>remove-vdiskserverdevice</code>
<code>set-vdiskserverdevice</code>	<code>remove-vdiskserver</code>
<code>set-vconscon</code>	<code>remove-vconscon</code>
<code>set-vswitch</code>	<code>remove-vswitch</code>
<code>remove-vdpcs</code>	

The remaining resource events always contain *only* the `<Content>` tag in the OVF data section that describes to which domain the event happened.

Resource Events	Resource Events	Resource Events
<code>add-vcpu</code>	<code>add-crypto</code>	<code>add-memory</code>
<code>add-io</code>	<code>add-variable</code>	<code>add-vconscon</code>

Resource Events	Resource Events	Resource Events
add-vdisk	add-vdiskserver	add-vnet
add-vswitch	add-vdpcs	add-vdpcc
set-vcpu	set-crypto	set-memory
set-variable	set-vnet	set-vconsole
set-vdisk	remove-vcpu	remove-crypto
remove-memory	remove-io	remove-variable
remove-vdisk	remove-vnet	remove-vdpcc

To register for the resource events, send an `<LDM_interface>` message with the `<action>` tag set to **reg-resource-events**. Unregistering for these events requires an `<LDM_interface>` message with the `<action>` tag set to **unreg-resource-events**.

All Events

You can also register to listen for all three type of events without having to register for each one individually. To register for all three types of events simultaneously, send an `<LDM_interface>` message with the `<action>` tag set to **reg-all-events**. Unregistering for these events require an `<LDM_interface>` message with the `<action>` tag set to **unreg-all-events**.

Logical Domains Manager Actions

The commands specified in the `<action>` tag, with the exception of `*-*` events commands, correspond to those of the LDoms command-line interface. For details about Logical Domains Manager (`ldm`) subcommands, see the [ldm\(1M\)](#) man page.

Note – The XML interface does *not* support the verb or command *aliases* supported by the Logical Domains Manager CLI.

The supported strings in the `<action>` tag are as follows:

LDoms Actions	LDoms Actions	LDoms Actions
list-bindings	list-services	list-constraints
list-devices	add-domain	remove-domain

LDom Actions	LDom Actions	LDom Actions
list-domain	start-domain	stop-domain
bind-domain	unbind-domain	add-io
remove-io	add-mau	set-mau
remove-mau	add-memory	set-memory
remove-memory	remove-reconf	add-spconfig
set-spconfig	remove-spconfig	list-spconfig
add-variable	set-variable	remove-variable
list-variable	add-vconscon	set-vconscon
remove-vconscon	set-vconsole	add-vcpu
set-vcpu	remove-vcpu	add-vdisk
remove-vdisk	add-vdiskserver	remove-vdiskserver
add-udpcc	remove-udpcc	add-udpccs
remove-udpccs	add-vdiskserverdevice	remove-vdiskserverdevice
add-vnet	set-vnet	remove-vnet
add-vswitch	set-vswitch	remove-vswitch
reg-domain-events	unreg-domain-events	reg-resource-events
unreg-resource-events	reg-hardware-events	unreg-hardware-events
reg-all-events	unreg-all-events	migrate-domain
cancel-operation	set-domain	

Logical Domains Manager Resources and Properties

Following are the Logical Domains Manager resources and the properties that can be defined for each of those resources. The resources and properties are shown in **bold** type in the XML examples. These examples show resources, not binding output. The constraint output can be used to create input for the Logical Domains Manager actions. The exception to this is domain migration output. See “[Domain Migration](#)” on page 209. Each resource is defined in a <Section> OVF section and is specified by a <rasd:OtherResourceType> tag.

Logical Domain Information (ldom_info) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-6 Example ldom_info XML Output

```
<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="primary">
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:ResourceAllocationSection_type">
      <Item>
        <rasd:OtherResourceType>ldom_info</rasd:OtherResourceType>
        <rasd:Address>00:03:ba:d8:ba:f6</rasd:Address>
        <gprop:GenericPropertykey="hostid">83d8baf6</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="master">plum</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="failure-policy">reset</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="progress">45%</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="status">ongoing</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="source">dt90-319</gprop:GenericProperty>
      </Item>
    </Section>
  </Content>
</Envelope>
```

The `ldom_info` resource is always contained within a `<Content>` section. The following properties within the `ldom_info` resource are optional properties:

- `<rasd:Address>` tag, which specifies the MAC address to be assigned to a domain.
- `<gprop:GenericPropertykey="failure-policy">` tag, which specifies how slave domains should behave should the master domain fail. The default value is `ignore`. Following are the valid property values:
 - `ignore` ignores failures of the master domain (slave domains are unaffected).
 - `panic` panics any slave domains when the master domain fails.
 - `reset` resets any slave domains when the master domain fails.
 - `stop` stops any slave domains when the master domain fails.
- `<gprop:GenericPropertykey="hostid">` tag, which specifies the host ID to be assigned to the domain.
- `<gprop:GenericPropertykey="master">` tag, which specifies up to four comma-separated master domain names.
- `<gprop:GenericPropertykey="progress">` tag, which specifies the percentage of progress made by the command.
- `<gprop:GenericPropertykey="source">` tag, which specifies the machine reporting on the progress of the command.
- `<gprop:GenericPropertykey="status">` tag, which specifies the status of the command (done, failed, or ongoing).

CPU (cpu) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-7 Example cpu XML

```
<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="ldg1">
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
      <Item>
        <rasd:OtherResourceType>cpu</rasd:OtherResourceType>
        <rasd:AllocationUnits>4</rasd:AllocationUnits>
      </Item>
    </Section>
  </Content>
</Envelope>
```

A cpu resource is always contained within a <Content> section. The only property is the <rasd:AllocationUnits> tag, which specifies the number of virtual CPUs.

MAU (mau) Resource

Note – The mau resource is any LDomS-supported cryptographic unit on an LDomS-supported server. Currently, the two cryptographic units supported are the Modular Arithmetic Unit (MAU) and the Control Word Queue (CWQ).

EXAMPLE 10-8 Example mau XML

```
<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="ldg1">
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
      <Item>
        <rasd:OtherResourceType>mau</rasd:OtherResourceType>
        <rasd:AllocationUnits>1</rasd:AllocationUnits>
      </Item>
    </Section>
  </Content>
</Envelope>
```

A mau resource is always contained within a <Content> section. The only property is the <rasd:AllocationUnits> tag, which signifies the number of MAUs or other cryptographic units.

Memory (memory) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-9 Example memory XML

```
<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="ldg1">
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
      <Item>
        <rasd:OtherResourceType>memory</rasd:OtherResourceType>
        <rasd:AllocationUnits>4G</rasd:AllocationUnits>
      </Item>
    </Section>
  </Content>
</Envelope>
```

A memory resource is always contained within a <Content> section. The only property is the <rasd:AllocationUnits> tag, which signifies the amount of memory.

Virtual Disk Server (vds) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-10 Example vds XML

```
<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="ldg1">
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
      <Item>
        <rasd:OtherResourceType>vds</rasd:OtherResourceType>
        <gprop:GenericProperty
          key="service_name">vdstmp</gprop:GenericProperty>
      </Item>
    </Section>
  </Content>
</Envelope>
```

A virtual disk server (vds) resource can be in a <Content> section as part of a domain description, or it can appear on its own in an <Envelope> section. The only property is the <gprop:GenericProperty> tag with a key of `service_name` and which contains the name of the vds resource being described.

Virtual Disk Server Volume (vds_volume) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-11 Example vds_volume XML

```
<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
    <Item>
      <rasd:OtherResourceType>vds_volume</rasd:OtherResourceType>
      <gprop:GenericProperty key="vol_name">vdsdev0</gprop:GenericProperty>
      <gprop:GenericProperty key="service_name">primary-vds0</gprop:GenericProperty>
      <gprop:GenericProperty key="block_dev">
        opt/SUNWldm/domain_disks/testdisk1</gprop:GenericProperty>
      <gprop:GenericProperty key="vol_opts">ro</gprop:GenericProperty>
      <gprop:GenericProperty key="mpgroup">mpgroup-name</gprop:GenericProperty>
    </Item>
  </Section>
</Envelope>
```

A vds_volume resource can be in a <Content> section as part of a domain description, or it can appear on its own in an <Envelope> section. It must have <gprop:GenericProperty> tags with the following keys:

- vol_name - Name of the volume
- service_name - Name of the virtual disk server to which this volume is to be bound
- block_dev - File or device name to be associated with this volume

Optionally, a vds_volume resource can also have the following properties:

- vol_opts – One or more of the following, comma-separated, within one string: {ro,slice,excl}
- mpgroup – Name of the multipath (failover) group

Disk (disk) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-12 Example disk XML

```
<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="ldg1">
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
      <Item>
        <rasd:OtherResourceType>disk</rasd:OtherResourceType>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="vdisk_name">vdisk0</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty
```

EXAMPLE 10-12 Example disk XML (Continued)

```

        key="service_name">primary-vds0</gprop:GenericProperty>
      <gprop:GenericProperty key="vol_name">vdsdev0</gprop:GenericProperty>
      <gprop:GenericProperty key="timeout">60</gprop:GenericProperty>
    </Item>
  </Section>
</Content>
</Envelope>

```

A disk resource is always contained within a <Content> section. It must have <gprop:GenericProperty> tags with the following keys:

- `vdisk_name` - Name of the virtual disk
- `service_name` - Name of the virtual disk server to which this virtual disk is to be bound
- `vol_name` - Virtual disk service device with which this virtual disk is to be associated

Optionally, the disk resource can also have the `timeout` property, which is the timeout value in seconds for establishing a connection between a virtual disk client (vdc) and a virtual disk server (vds). If there are multiple virtual disk (vdisk) paths, then the vdc can try to connect to a different vds, and the timeout ensures that a connection to any vds is established within the specified amount of time.

Virtual Switch (vsw) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-13 Example vsw XML

```

<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="ldg1">
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
      <Item>
        <rasd:OtherResourceType>vsw</rasd:OtherResourceType>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="service_name">vsw1-ldg1</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="dev-path">bge0</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <rasd:Address>00:14:4f:fc:00:01</rasd:Address>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="mode">sc</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="pvid">12345678</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="vid">87654321</gprop:GenericProperty>
      </Item>
    </Section>
  </Content>
</Envelope>

```

A vsw resource can be either in a <Content> section as part of a domain description, or it can appear on its own in an <Envelope> section. It must have <gprop:GenericProperty> tags with the following keys:

- service_name - Name to be assigned to the virtual switch.
- dev-path - Path of the network device to be associated with this virtual switch

Optionally, the vsw resource can also have the following properties:

- <rasd:Address> - Assigns a MAC address to the virtual switch
- pvid - Port virtual local area network (VLAN) identifier (ID) indicates the VLAN of which the virtual network needs to be a member, in untagged mode.
- vid - Virtual local area network (VLAN) identifier (ID) indicates the VLAN of which a virtual network and virtual switch need to be a member, in tagged mode.
- mode - sc for SunCluster heartbeat support.

Network (network) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-14 Example network XML

```
<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="ldg1">
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
      <Item>
        <rasd:OtherResourceType>network</rasd:OtherResourceType>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="vnet_name">ldg1-vnet0</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty
          key="service_name">primary-vsw0</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <rasd:Address>00:14:4f:fc:00:01</rasd:Address>
      </Item>
    </Section>
  </Content>
</Envelope>
```

A network resource is always contained within a <Content> section. It must have <gprop:GenericProperty> tags with the following keys:

- vnet_name - Name of the virtual network (vnet)
- service_name - Name of the virtual switch (vswi tch) to which this virtual network is to be bound

Optionally, the network resource can also have the following properties:

- `<rasd:Address>` - Assigns a MAC address to the virtual switch
- `pvid` - Port virtual local area network (VLAN) identifier (ID) indicates the VLAN of which the virtual network needs to be a member, in untagged mode.
- `vid` - Virtual local area network (VLAN) identifier (ID) indicates the VLAN of which a virtual network and virtual switch need to be a member, in tagged mode.
- `mode` - `hybrid` to enable hybrid I/O for that virtual network.

Virtual Console Concentrator (vcc) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-15 Example vcc XML

```
<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="ldg1">
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
      <Item>
        <rasd:OtherResourceType>vcc</rasd:OtherResourceType>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="service_name">vcc1</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="min_port">6000</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="max_port">6100</gprop:GenericProperty>
      </Item>
    </Section>
  </Content>
</Envelope>
```

A vcc resource can be either in a `<Content>` section as part of a domain description, or it can appear on its own in an `<Envelope>` section. It can have `<gprop:GenericProperty>` tags with the following keys:

- `service_name` - Name to be assigned to the virtual console concentrator service
- `min_port` - Minimum port number to be associated with this vcc
- `max_port` - Maximum port number to be associated with this vcc

Variable (var) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-16 Example var XML

```
<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="ldg1">
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
```

EXAMPLE 10-16 Example var XML (Continued)

```
<Item>
  <rasd:OtherResourceType>var</rasd:OtherResourceType>
  <gprop:GenericProperty key="name">test_var</gprop:GenericProperty>
  <gprop:GenericProperty key="value">test1</gprop:GenericProperty>
</Item>
</Section>
</Content>
</Envelope>
```

A var resource is always contained within a <Content> section. It can have <gprop:GenericProperty> tags with the following keys:

- name - Name of the variable
- value - Value of the variable

Physical I/O Device (physio_device) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-17 Example physio_device XML

```
<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="ldg1">
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
      <Item>
        <rasd:OtherResourceType>physio_device</rasd:OtherResourceType>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="name">pci@780</gprop:GenericProperty>
      </Item>
    </Section>
  </Content>
</Envelope>
```

A physio_device resource is always contained within a <Content> section. The only property is the <gprop:GenericProperty> tag with the name key property value, which is the name of the I/O device being described.

SP Configuration (spconfig) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-18 Example spconfig XML

```
<Envelope>
  <Section xsi:type="ovf:ResourceAllocationSection_type">
    <Item>
```

EXAMPLE 10-18 Example spconfig XML (Continued)

```

    <rasd:OtherResourceType>spconfig</rasd:OtherResourceType>
    <gprop:GenericProperty
      key="spconfig_name">primary</gprop:GenericProperty>
    <gprop:GenericProperty
      key="spconfig_status">current</gprop:GenericProperty>
  </Item>
</Section>
</Envelope>

```

A service processor (SP) configuration (spconfig) resource always appears on its own in an <Envelope> section. It can have <gprop:GenericProperty> tags with the following keys

- spconfig_name - Name of a configuration to be stored on the SP
- spconfig_status - The current status of a particular SP configuration. This property is used in the output of an `ldm list -spconfig` command.

Virtual Data Plane Channel Service (vdpcs) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-19 Example vdpcs XML

```

<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="ldg1">
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
      <Item>
        <rasd:OtherResourceType>vdpcs</rasd:OtherResourceType>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="service_name">dg1-vdpcs</gprop:GenericProperty>
      </Item>
    </Section>
  </Content>
</Envelope>

```

This resource is only of interest in a Netra DPS environment. A vdpcs resource can be either in a <Content> section as part of a domain description, or it can appear on its own in an <Envelope> section. The only property is the <gprop:GenericProperty> tag with the service_name key property value, which is the name of the virtual data plane channel service (vdpcs) resource being described.

Virtual Data Plane Channel Client (vdpcc) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-20 Example vdpcc XML

```
<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="ldg1">
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
      <Item>
        <rasd:OtherResourceType>vdpcc</rasd:OtherResourceType>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="vdpcc_name">vdpcc</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty
          key="service_name">ldg1-vdpcs</gprop:GenericProperty>
      </Item>
    </Section>
  </Content>
</Envelope>
```

This resource is only of interest in a Netra DPS environment. A virtual data plane channel client resource is always contained within a <Content> section. It can have <gprop:GenericProperty> tags with the following keys:

- vdpcc_name - Name of the virtual data plane channel client (vdpcc)
- service_name - Name of the virtual data plane channel service vdpcs to which this vdpcc is to be bound

Console (console) Resource

EXAMPLE 10-21 Example console XML

```
<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" id="ldg1">
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
      <Item>
        <rasd:OtherResourceType>console</rasd:OtherResourceType>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="port">6000</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="service_name">vcc2</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="group">group-name</gprop:GenericProperty>
      </Item>
    </Section>
  </Content>
</Envelope>
```

A console resource is always contained within a <Content> section. It can have <gprop:GenericProperty> tags with the following keys:

- port – Port to which to change this virtual console (console)
- service_name – Virtual console concentrator (vcc) service to which to bind this console
- group – Name of the group to which to bind this console

Domain Migration

This example shows what is contained in the <data> section for a migrate-domain subcommand.

EXAMPLE 10-22 Example migrate-domain <data> Section

```
<Envelope>
  <References/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" ovf:id="ldg1"/>
  <Content xsi:type="ovf:VirtualSystem_Type" ovf:id="ldg1"/>
    <Section xsi:type="ovf:ResourceAllocationSection_Type">
      <Item>
        <rasd:OtherResourceType>ldom_info</rasd:OtherResourceType>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="target">target-host</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="username">user-name</gprop:GenericProperty>
        <gprop:GenericProperty key="password">password</gprop:GenericProperty>
      </Item>
    </Section>
  </Content>
</Envelope>
```

Where:

- First <Content> node (without an <ldom_info> section) is the source domain to migrate.
- Second <Content> node (with an <ldom_info> section) is the target domain to which to migrate. The source and target domain names can be the same.
- The <ldom_info> section for the target domain describes the machine to which to migrate and the details needed to migrate to that machine:
 - target-host is the target machine to which to migrate.
 - user-name is the login user name for the target machine. Must be SASL 64-bit encoded.
 - password is the password to use for logging into the target machine. Must be SASL 64-bit encoded.

Note – The Logical Domains Manager uses `sasl_decode64()` to decode the target user name and password and uses `sasl_encode64()` to encode these values. SASL 64 encoding is equivalent to base64 encoding.

XML Schemas

This appendix provides various XML schemas for your use with the Logical Domains Manager.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- “LDM_interface XML Schema” on page 211
- “LDM_Event XML Schema” on page 213
- “The ovf-envelope.xsd Schema” on page 214
- “The ovf-section.xsd Schema” on page 217
- “The ovf-core.xsd Schema” on page 217
- “The ovf-virtualhardware.xsc Schema” on page 223
- “The cim-rasd.xsd Schema” on page 224
- “The cim-vssd.xsd Schema” on page 229
- “The cim-common.xsd Schema” on page 230
- “The GenericProperty XML Schema” on page 234
- “Binding_Type XML Schema” on page 234

LDM_interface XML Schema

This schema is a snapshot of the Open Virtualization Format (OVF) Draft Specification version 0.98

EXAMPLE A-1 LDM_interface XML Schema

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
xs:schema
  xmlns:ovf="/var/opt/SUNWldom/envelope"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
  <xs:import namespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/envelope" schemaLocation="ovf-envelope.xsd"/>

  <xs:annotation>
    <xs:documentation>
```


EXAMPLE A-1 LDM_interface XML Schema (Continued)

```

    </xs:complexType>
  </xs:element> <!-- END data -->

  <!-- CMD response -->
  <xs:element name="response" type="responseType" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>

  </xs:sequence>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:element> <!-- END cmd -->

<!-- DOCUMENT response -->
<xs:element name="response" type="responseType" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>

</xs:sequence>
<xs:attribute name="version" type="xs:string" use="required"/>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:element> <!-- LDM interface document -->

</xs:schema>

```

LDM_Event XML Schema

EXAMPLE A-2 LDM_Event XML Schema

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<xs:schema
  xmlns:ovf="/var/opt/SUNWldom/envelope"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">

  <xs:import namespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/envelope" schemaLocation="ovf-envelope.xsd"/>

  <xs:annotation>
    <xs:documentation>
      Copyright 2007 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
      Use is subject to license terms.
    </xs:documentation>
  </xs:annotation>

  <!-- LDM interface document -->
  <xs:element name="LDM_event">
    <xs:complexType>
      <xs:sequence>

        <!-- START cmd -->

```

EXAMPLE A-2 LDM_Event XML Schema (Continued)

```

<xs:element name="cmd" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <xs:complexType>
    <xs:sequence>
      <xs:element name="action" type="xs:string" minOccurs="0"/>

      <!-- START data -->
      <xs:element name="data" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xs:complexType>
          <xs:choice minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">

            <!--OVF Envelope Version 0.9 -->
            <xs:element name="Envelope" type="ovf:Envelope_Type"/>

          </xs:choice>
          <xs:attribute name="version" type="xs:string" use="required"/>
        </xs:complexType>
      </xs:element> <!-- END data -->

    </xs:sequence>
  </xs:complexType>
</xs:element> <!-- END cmd -->

</xs:sequence>
<xs:attribute name="version" type="xs:string" use="required"/>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:element> <!-- LDM interface document -->

</xs:schema>

```

The ovf-envelope.xsd Schema

EXAMPLE A-3 The ovf-envelope.xsd Schema

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xs:schema
  targetNamespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/envelope"
  xmlns:ovf="/var/opt/SUNWldom/envelope"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">

  <!-- Include virtual hardware schema -->
  <xs:include schemaLocation="./ovf-section.xsd"/>
  <xs:include schemaLocation="./cim-virtualhardware.xsd"/>
  <xs:include schemaLocation="./ovf-core.xsd"/>

```

EXAMPLE A-3 The ovf-envelope.xsd Schema (Continued)

```

<!-- Root element of a OVF package -->
<xs:element name="Envelope" type="ovf:Envelope_Type"/>

<xs:complexType name="Envelope_Type">
  <xs:sequence>
    <!-- References to all external files -->
    <xs:element name="References" type="ovf:References_Type"/>

    <!-- Package level meta-data -->
    <xs:element name="Section" type="ovf:Section_Type" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>

    <!-- Content. A virtual machine or a vService -->
    <xs:element name="Content" type="ovf:Entity_Type" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>

    <xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </xs:sequence>
  <xs:attribute name="signed" type="xs:boolean" use="optional"/>
  <xs:attribute name="manifest" type="xs:boolean" use="optional"/>
  <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="References_Type">
  <xs:sequence>
    <xs:element name="File" type="ovf:File_Type" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </xs:sequence>
<xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- Type for an external reference to a resource -->
<xs:complexType name="File_Type">
  <xs:sequence>
    <xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </xs:sequence>

  <!-- Reference key used in other parts of the package -->
  <xs:attribute name="id" type="xs:string" use="required"/>
  <!-- Same as using a single part element -->
  <xs:attribute name="href" type="xs:string" use="required"/>
  <!-- Size in bytes of the files (if known) -->
  <xs:attribute name="size" type="xs:integer" use="optional"/>
  <!-- Estimated size in bytes of the files (if a good guess is known) -->
  <xs:attribute name="estSize" type="xs:integer" use="optional"/>

```

EXAMPLE A-3 The ovf-envelope.xsd Schema (Continued)

```
<!-- Compression type (gzip or bzip2) -->
<xs:attribute name="compression" type="xs:string" use="optional"/>
<!-- Chunk size (except of last chunk) -->
<xs:attribute name="chunkSize" type="xs:long" use="optional"/>

<xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- Base class for an entity -->
<xs:complexType name="Entity_Type" abstract="true">
  <xs:sequence>
    <xs:element name="Info" type="ovf:Info_Type" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <xs:element name="Section" type="ovf:Section_Type" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </xs:sequence>
  <xs:attribute name="id" type="xs:string" use="required"/>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- A Virtual Machine Entity -->
<xs:complexType name="VirtualSystem_Type">
<xs:complexContent>
  <xs:extension base="ovf:Entity_Type" /> </xs:extension>
</xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- A Composite Service -->
<xs:complexType name="VirtualSystemCollection_Type">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="ovf:Entity_Type">
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name="Content" type="ovf:Entity_Type" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xs:sequence>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:schema>
```

The ovf-section.xsd Schema

EXAMPLE A-4 The ovf-section.xsd Schema

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xs:schema
  targetNamespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/envelope"
  xmlns:ovf="/var/opt/SUNWldom/envelope"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
  <xs:import namespace="http://www.w3.org/XML/1998/namespace"
    schemaLocation="http://www.w3.org/2001/xml.xsd"/>

  <!-- The base class for a section. Subclassing this is the most common form of extensibility -->
  <xs:complexType name="Section_Type" abstract="true">
    <xs:sequence>
      <!-- The info element specifies the meaning of the section. This is typically shown
           if the section is not understood by the importer -->
      <xs:element name="Info" type="ovf:Info_Type" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xs:sequence>
  <!-- Whether the import should fail or not, if the section is not understood -->
  <xs:attribute name="required" type="xs:boolean" use="optional"/>
  <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
  <!-- Subtypes defines more specific elements -->
</xs:complexType>

  <!-- A basic type for a localizable string -->
  <xs:complexType name="Info_Type">
    <xs:simpleContent>
      <xs:extension base="xs:string">
        <xs:attribute ref="xml:lang"/>
      </xs:extension>
    </xs:simpleContent>
  </xs:complexType>
</xs:schema>

```

The ovf-core.xsd Schema

EXAMPLE A-5 The ovf-core.xsd Schema

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xs:schema
  targetNamespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/envelope"
  xmlns:ovf="/var/opt/SUNWldom/envelope"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">

  <xs:include schemaLocation="ovf-section.xsd"/>

```

EXAMPLE A-5 The ovf-core.xsd Schema (Continued)

```

<xs:import namespace="http://www.w3.org/XML/1998/namespace"
  schemaLocation="http://www.w3.org/2001/xml.xsd"/>

<!-- A user defined annotation on an entity -->
<xs:complexType name="AnnotationSection_Type">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="ovf:Section_Type">
      <xs:sequence>
        <!-- Several localized annotations can be included -->
        <xs:element name="Annotation" type="ovf:Info_Type" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0"
          maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xs:sequence>
      <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- Product information about a virtual appliance -->
<xs:complexType name="ProductSection_Type">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="ovf:Section_Type">
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name="Product" type="ovf:Info_Type" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:element name="Vendor" type="ovf:Info_Type" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:element name="Version" type="xs:string" minOccurs="0"/>
        <xs:element name="Full-version" type="xs:string" minOccurs="0"/>
        <xs:element name="ProductUrl" type="xs:string" minOccurs="0"/>
        <xs:element name="VendorUrl" type="xs:string" minOccurs="0"/>
        <xs:element name="AppUrl" type="xs:string" minOccurs="0"/>
        <xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xs:sequence>
      <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- Configuration parameters that can be passed to the virtual machine for
  application-level configuration -->
<xs:complexType name="PropertySection_Type">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="ovf:Section_Type">
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name="Property" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xs:sequence>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>

```

EXAMPLE A-5 The ovf-core.xsd Schema (Continued)

```

<xs:complexType>
  <xs:sequence>
    <xs:element name="Description" type="ovf:Info_Type" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </xs:sequence>
  <xs:attribute name="key" type="xs:string"/>
  <xs:attribute name="type" type="xs:string"/>
  <xs:attribute name="configurableByUser" type="xs:boolean" use="optional"/>
  <xs:attribute name="configurableAtRuntime" type="xs:boolean" use="optional"/>
  <xs:attribute name="defaultValue" type="xs:string" use="optional"/>
  <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:element>
<xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</xs:sequence>
<!-- A comma-separated list of transports that are supported by the virtual machine to
  access the OVF environment. -->
<xs:attribute name="transport" type="xs:string" use="optional"/>
<xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
</xs:extension>
</xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- Provides descriptions for the logical networks used within the package. These descriptions are
  typically used as an aid when the package is deployed. -->
<xs:complexType name="NetworkSection_Type">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="ovf:Section_Type">
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name="Network" maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <xs:complexType>
            <xs:sequence>
              <xs:element name="Description" type="ovf:Info_Type" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
              <xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0"
                maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
              <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
            </xs:sequence>
            <xs:attribute name="name" type="xs:string" use="required"/>
            <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
          </xs:complexType>
        </xs:element>
        <xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xs:sequence>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>

```

EXAMPLE A-5 The ovf-core.xsd Schema (Continued)

```

    </xs:sequence>
    <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
  </xs:extension>
</xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- Provides meta-information description of the virtual disks in the package -->
<xs:complexType name="DiskSection_Type">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="ovf:Section_Type">
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name="Disk" type="ovf:VirtualDiskDesc_Type" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xs:sequence>
      <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
<!-- Disk -->
<xs:complexType name="VirtualDiskDesc_Type">
  <!-- A logical ID for the virtual disk within this package -->
  <xs:attribute name="diskId" type="xs:string" use="required"/>
  <!-- A file reference to the virtual disk file. If this is not specified a blank virtual disk is
  created of the given size -->
  <xs:attribute name="fileRef" type="xs:string" use="optional"/>
  <!-- Capacity in bytes. The capacity can be specified as either a size or as a reference to a property
  using $(property_name) -->
  <xs:attribute name="capacity" type="xs:string" use="required"/>
  <!-- Format of the disk. The format is an URL that identifies the disk type,
  e.g., http://www.vmware.com/format/vmdk.html#sparse -->
  <xs:attribute name="format" type="xs:string" use="required"/>
  <!-- Populated size of disk. This is an estimation of how much storage the disk needs if backed by
  a non pre-allocated (aka. sparse) disk. This size does not take the meta-data into
  account used by a sparse disk. -->
  <xs:attribute name="populatedSize" type="xs:long" use="optional"/>
  <!-- Reference to a potential parent disk -->
  <xs:attribute name="parentRef" type="xs:string" use="optional"/>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- CPU Architecture requirements for the guest software. -->
<xs:complexType name="CpuCompatibilitySection_Type">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="ovf:Section_Type">
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name="Level" maxOccurs="unbounded">

```

EXAMPLE A-5 The ovf-core.xsd Schema (Continued)

```

<xs:complexType>
  <xs:attribute name="level" type="xs:int" use="optional"/>
  <xs:attribute name="eax" type="xs:string" use="optional"/>
  <xs:attribute name="ebx" type="xs:string" use="optional"/>
  <xs:attribute name="ecx" type="xs:string" use="optional"/>
  <xs:attribute name="edx" type="xs:string" use="optional"/>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:element>
<xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</xs:sequence>
<xs:attribute name="Vendor" type="xs:string"/>
<xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
</xs:extension>
</xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- Specification of the operating system installed in the guest -->
<xs:complexType name="OperatingSystemSection_Type">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="ovf:Section_Type">
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name="Description" type="ovf:Info_Type" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xs:sequence>
      <!-- The IDs are the enumeration used in CIM_OperatingSystem_Type -->
      <xs:attribute name="id" type="xs:string"/>
      <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- End-User License Agreement -->
<xs:complexType name="EulaSection_Type">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="ovf:Section_Type">
      <xs:sequence>
        <!-- Contains the license agreement in plain text. Several different locales can be
        specified -->
        <xs:element name="License" type="ovf:Info_Type" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xs:sequence>
      <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>

```

EXAMPLE A-5 The ovf-core.xsd Schema (Continued)

```

</xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- For a VirtualSystemCollection, this section is used to specify the order in which the
contained entities are to be powered on. -->
<xs:complexType name="StartupSection_Type">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="ovf:Section_Type">
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name="item" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <xs:complexType>
            <!-- Id of entity in collection -->
            <xs:attribute name="id" type="xs:string"/>
            <!-- Startup order. Entities are started up starting with lower-numbers first. Items with
            same order identifier may be started up concurrently or in any order.
            The order is reversed for shutdown. -->
            <xs:attribute name="order" type="xs:int"/>
            <!-- Delay in seconds to wait for the power on to complete -->
            <xs:attribute name="startDelay" type="xs:int"/>
            <!-- Whether to resume power-on sequence, once the guest reports ok. -->
            <xs:attribute name="waitingForGuest" type="xs:boolean"/>
            <!-- Delay in seconds to wait for the power on to complete -->
            <xs:attribute name="stopDelay" type="xs:int"/>
            <!-- Stop action to use. Valid values are: 'powerOn' (default), 'none'. -->
            <xs:attribute name="startAction" type="xs:string"/>
            <!-- Stop action to use. Valid values are: 'powerOff' (default), 'guestShutdown',
            'suspend'. -->
            <xs:attribute name="stopAction" type="xs:string"/>
            <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
          </xs:complexType>
        </xs:element>
        <xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xs:sequence>
      <!-- A comma-separated list of transports that the virtual machine supports to provide
      feedback. -->
      <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- If this section is present, it indicates that the virtual machine needs to be initially
booted to install and configure the software. -->
<xs:complexType name="InstallSection_Type">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="ovf:Section_Type">

```

EXAMPLE A-5 The ovf-core.xsd Schema (Continued)

```

<xs:sequence>
  <xs:any namespace="##targetNamespace" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</xs:sequence>
<!-- A comma-separated list of transports that the virtual machine supports to provide
feedback. -->
<xs:attribute name="transport" type="xs:string"/>
<xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
</xs:extension>
</xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:schema>

```

The ovf-virtualhardware.xsc Schema

EXAMPLE A-6 The ovf-virtualhardware.xsc Schema

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xs:schema
  targetNamespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/envelope"
  xmlns:ovf="/var/opt/SUNWldom/envelope"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns:vssd="/var/opt/SUNWldom/CIM_VirtualSystemSettingData"
  xmlns:rasd="/var/opt/SUNWldom/CIM_ResourceAllocationSettingData">

  <xs:import namespace="http://www.w3.org/XML/1998/namespace"
    schemaLocation="http://www.w3.org/2001/xml.xsd"/>

  <xs:include schemaLocation="ovf-section.xsd"/>

  <xs:import namespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/CIM_VirtualSystemSettingData" schemaLocation="cim-vssd.xsd"/>
  <xs:import namespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/CIM_ResourceAllocationSettingData"
    schemaLocation="cim-rasd.xsd"/>

  <!-- Specifies the virtual hardware for a virtual machine -->
  <xs:complexType name="VirtualHardwareSection_Type">
    <xs:complexContent>
      <xs:extension base="ovf:Section_Type">
        <xs:sequence>
          <xs:element name="System" type="vssd:CIM_VirtualSystemSettingData_Type" minOccurs="0"/>
          <xs:element name="Item" type="rasd:CIM_ResourceAllocationSettingData_Type"
            minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </xs:sequence>
      </xs:extension>
    </xs:complexContent>
  </xs:complexType>

```

EXAMPLE A-6 The ovf-virtualhardware.xsc Schema (Continued)

```

    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- Specifies a section for resource constraints on a VirtualSystemCollection -->
<xs:complexType name="ResourceAllocationSection_Type">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="ovf:Section_Type">
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name="Item" type="rasd:CIM_ResourceAllocationSettingData_Type"
          minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </xs:sequence>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:schema>

```

The cim-rasd.xsd Schema

EXAMPLE A-7 The cim-rasd.xsd Schema

```

<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8'?>
<xs:schema
  targetNamespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/CIM_ResourceAllocationSettingData"
  xmlns:class="/var/opt/SUNWldom/CIM_ResourceAllocationSettingData"
  xmlns:cim="/var/opt/SUNWldom/common"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">

  <xs:import namespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/common" schemaLocation="cim-common.xsd"/>

  <xs:element name="Caption" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>

  <xs:element name="Description" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>

  <xs:element name="InstanceId" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>

  <xs:element name="ResourceType" nillable="true">
    <xs:complexType>
      <xs:simpleContent>
        <xs:restriction base="xs:anyType">
          <xs:simpleType>
            <xs:union>
              <xs:simpleType>
                <xs:restriction base="xs:unsignedShort">

```

EXAMPLE A-7 The cim-rasd.xsd Schema (Continued)

```

<xs:enumeration value="1"/> <!-- Other -->
<xs:enumeration value="2"/> <!-- Computer System -->
<xs:enumeration value="3"/> <!-- Processor-->
<xs:enumeration value="4"/> <!-- Memory-->
<xs:enumeration value="5"/> <!-- IDE Controller -->
<xs:enumeration value="6"/> <!-- Parallel SCSI HBA -->
<xs:enumeration value="7"/> <!-- FC HBA -->
<xs:enumeration value="8"/> <!-- iSCSI HBA -->
<xs:enumeration value="9"/> <!-- IB HCA -->
<xs:enumeration value="10"/> <!-- Ethernet Adapter -->
<xs:enumeration value="11"/> <!-- Other Network Adapter -->
<xs:enumeration value="12"/> <!-- I/O Slot -->
<xs:enumeration value="13"/> <!-- I/O Device -->
<xs:enumeration value="14"/> <!-- Floppy Drive -->
<xs:enumeration value="15"/> <!-- CD Drive -->
<xs:enumeration value="16"/> <!-- DVD drive -->
<xs:enumeration value="17"/> <!-- Disk Drive -->
<xs:enumeration value="18"/> <!-- Tape Drive -->
<xs:enumeration value="19"/> <!-- Storage Extent -->
<xs:enumeration value="20"/> <!-- Other storage device -->
<xs:enumeration value="21"/> <!-- Serial port -->
<xs:enumeration value="22"/> <!-- Parallel port -->
<xs:enumeration value="23"/> <!-- USB Controller -->
<xs:enumeration value="24"/> <!-- Graphics controller -->
<xs:enumeration value="25"/> <!-- IEEE 1394 Controller -->
<xs:enumeration value="26"/> <!-- Partitionable Unit -->
<xs:enumeration value="27"/> <!-- Base Partitionable Unit -->
<xs:enumeration value="28"/> <!-- Power Supply -->
<xs:enumeration value="29"/> <!-- Cooling Device -->
<xs:enumeration value="29"/> <!-- Cooling Device -->
<xs:enumeration value="31"/> <!-- PS2 Controller -->
<xs:enumeration value="32"/> <!-- SIO Controller -->
<xs:enumeration value="33"/> <!-- Keyboard -->
<xs:enumeration value="34"/> <!-- Pointing Device -->
</xs:restriction>
</xs:simpleType>
<xs:simpleType>
  <xs:restriction base="xs:unsignedShort">
    <xs:minInclusive value="30"/>
    <xs:maxInclusive value="32769"/>
  </xs:restriction>
</xs:simpleType>
<xs:simpleType>
  <xs:restriction base="xs:unsignedShort">
    <xs:minInclusive value="32768"/>
    <xs:maxInclusive value="65535"/>
  </xs:restriction>
</xs:simpleType>

```

EXAMPLE A-7 The cim-rasd.xsd Schema (Continued)

```

        </xs:restriction>
      </xs:simpleType>
    </xs:union>
  </xs:simpleType>
  <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
</xs:restriction>
</xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:element>

<xs:element name="OtherResourceType" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>

<xs:element name="ResourceSubType" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>

<xs:element name="PoolID" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>

<xs:element name="ConsumerVisibility" nillable="true">
  <xs:complexType>
    <xs:simpleContent>
      <xs:restriction base="xs:anyType">
        <xs:simpleType>
          <xs:union>
            <xs:simpleType>
              <xs:restriction base="xs:unsignedShort">
                <xs:enumeration value="0"/>
                <xs:enumeration value="2"/>
                <xs:enumeration value="3"/>
                <xs:enumeration value="4"/>
              </xs:restriction>
            </xs:simpleType>
            <xs:simpleType>
              <xs:restriction base="xs:unsignedShort">
                <xs:minInclusive value="5"/>
                <xs:maxInclusive value="32768"/>
              </xs:restriction>
            </xs:simpleType>
            <xs:simpleType>
              <xs:restriction base="xs:unsignedShort">
                <xs:minInclusive value="32767"/>
                <xs:maxInclusive value="65535"/>
              </xs:restriction>
            </xs:simpleType>
          </xs:union>
        </xs:simpleType>
      </xs:restriction>
    </xs:complexType>
  </xs:element>

```

EXAMPLE A-7 The cim-rasd.xsd Schema (Continued)

```

    </xs:simpleContent>
  </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>

<xs:element name="HostResource" nillable="true" type="xs:anyType"/>
<xs:element name="AllocationUnits" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>
<xs:element name="VirtualQuantity" nillable="true" type="cim:cimUnsignedLong"/>
<xs:element name="Reservation" nillable="true" type="cim:cimUnsignedLong"/>
<xs:element name="Limit" nillable="true" type="cim:cimUnsignedLong"/>
<xs:element name="Weight" nillable="true" type="cim:cimUnsignedInt"/>
<xs:element name="AutomaticAllocation" nillable="true" type="cim:cimBoolean"/>
<xs:element name="AutomaticDeallocation" nillable="true" type="cim:cimBoolean"/>
<xs:element name="Parent" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>
<xs:element name="Connection" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>
<xs:element name="Address" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>
<xs:element name="MappingBehavior" nillable="true">
  <xs:complexType>
    <xs:simpleContent>
      <xs:restriction base="xs:anyType">
        <xs:simpleType>
          <xs:union>
            <xs:simpleType>
              <xs:restriction base="xs:unsignedShort">
                <xs:enumeration value="0"/>
                <xs:enumeration value="1"/>
                <xs:enumeration value="2"/>
                <xs:enumeration value="3"/>
                <xs:enumeration value="4"/>
              </xs:restriction>
            </xs:simpleType>
            <xs:simpleType>
              <xs:restriction base="xs:unsignedShort">
                <xs:minInclusive value="5"/>
                <xs:maxInclusive value="32768"/>
              </xs:restriction>
            </xs:simpleType>
            <xs:simpleType>
              <xs:restriction base="xs:unsignedShort">
                <xs:minInclusive value="32767"/>
                <xs:maxInclusive value="65535"/>
              </xs:restriction>
            </xs:simpleType>
          </xs:union>
        </xs:simpleType>
      <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
    </xs:restriction>
  </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>

```

EXAMPLE A-7 The cim-rasd.xsd Schema (Continued)

```
</xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:element>
<xs:element name="AddressOnParent" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>

<xs:element name="BusNumber" nillable="true" type="cim:cimUnsignedShort"/>

<xs:complexType name="CIM_ResourceAllocationSettingData_Type">
  <xs:sequence>
    <xs:element ref="class:Caption" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:Description" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:InstanceId" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:ResourceType" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:OtherResourceType" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:ResourceSubType" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:PoolID" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:ConsumerVisibility" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:HostResource" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:AllocationUnits" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:VirtualQuantity" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:Reservation" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:Limit" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:Weight" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:AutomaticAllocation" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:AutomaticDeallocation" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:Parent" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:Connection" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:Address" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:MappingBehavior" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:AddressOnParent" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:element ref="class:BusNumber" minOccurs="0"/>
    <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </xs:sequence>
  <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:element name="CIM_ResourceAllocationSettingData"
  type="class:CIM_ResourceAllocationSettingData_Type"/>
</xs:schema>
```

The cim-vssd.xsd Schema

EXAMPLE A-8 The cim-vssd.xsd Schema

```

<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8'?>
<xs:schema
  targetNamespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/CIM_VirtualSystemSettingData"
  xmlns:class="/var/opt/SUNWldom/CIM_VirtualSystemSettingData"
  xmlns:cim="/var/opt/SUNWldom/common"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">

  <xs:import namespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/common"
    schemaLocation="cim-common.xsd"/>

  <xs:element name="Caption" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>

  <xs:element name="Description" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>

  <xs:element name="InstanceId" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>

  <xs:element name="VirtualSystemIdentifier" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>

  <xs:element name="VirtualSystemType" nillable="true" type="cim:cimString"/>

  <xs:complexType name="CIM_VirtualSystemSettingData_Type">
    <xs:sequence>
      <xs:element ref="class:Caption" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <xs:element ref="class:Description" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <xs:element ref="class:InstanceId" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xs:element ref="class:VirtualSystemIdentifier" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xs:element ref="class:VirtualSystemType" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xs:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xs:sequence>
    <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any"/>
  </xs:complexType>

  <xs:element name="CIM_VirtualSystemSettingData" type="class:CIM_VirtualSystemSettingData_Type"/>

</xs:schema>

```

The cim-common.xsd Schema

EXAMPLE A-9 The cim-common.xsd Schema

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<xs:schema
  targetNamespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/common"
  xmlns:cim="/var/opt/SUNWldom/common"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" elementFormDefault="qualified">

  <!-- The following are runtime attribute definitions -->
  <xs:attribute name="Key" type="xs:boolean"/>

  <xs:attribute name="Version" type="xs:string"/>

  <!-- The following section defines the extended WS-CIM datatypes -->
  <xs:complexType name="cimDateTime">
    <xs:choice>
      <xs:element name="CIM_DateTime" type="xs:string" nillable="true"/>
      <xs:element name="Interval" type="xs:duration"/>
      <xs:element name="Date" type="xs:date"/>
      <xs:element name="Time" type="xs:time"/>
      <xs:element name="Datetime" type="xs:dateTime"/>
    </xs:choice>
    <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
  </xs:complexType>

  <xs:complexType name="cimUnsignedByte">
    <xs:simpleContent>
      <xs:extension base="xs:unsignedByte">
        <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
      </xs:extension>
    </xs:simpleContent>
  </xs:complexType>

  <xs:complexType name="cimByte">
    <xs:simpleContent>
      <xs:extension base="xs:byte">
        <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
      </xs:extension>
    </xs:simpleContent>
  </xs:complexType>

  <xs:complexType name="cimUnsignedShort">
    <xs:simpleContent>
      <xs:extension base="xs:unsignedShort">
        <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
      </xs:extension>
    </xs:simpleContent>
  </xs:complexType>
```

EXAMPLE A-9 The cim-common.xsd Schema (Continued)

```
</xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="cimShort">
  <xs:simpleContent>
    <xs:extension base="xs:short">
      <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="cimUnsignedInt">
  <xs:simpleContent>
    <xs:extension base="xs:unsignedInt">
      <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="cimInt">
  <xs:simpleContent>
    <xs:extension base="xs:int">
      <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="cimUnsignedLong">
  <xs:simpleContent>
    <xs:extension base="xs:unsignedLong">
      <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="cimLong">
  <xs:simpleContent>
    <xs:extension base="xs:long">
      <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="cimString">
  <xs:simpleContent>
    <xs:extension base="xs:string">
```

EXAMPLE A-9 The cim-common.xsd Schema (Continued)

```
        <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
    </xs:extension>
</xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="cimBoolean">
    <xs:simpleContent>
        <xs:extension base="xs:boolean">
            <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
        </xs:extension>
    </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="cimFloat">
    <xs:simpleContent>
        <xs:extension base="xs:float">
            <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
        </xs:extension>
    </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="cimDouble">
    <xs:simpleContent>
        <xs:extension base="xs:double">
            <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
        </xs:extension>
    </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="cimChar16">
    <xs:simpleContent>
        <xs:restriction base="cim:cimString">
            <xs:maxLength value="1"/>
            <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
        </xs:restriction>
    </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="cimBase64Binary">
    <xs:simpleContent>
        <xs:extension base="xs:base64Binary">
            <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
        </xs:extension>
    </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>
```

EXAMPLE A-9 The cim-common.xsd Schema (Continued)

```

<xs:complexType name="cimHexBinary">
  <xs:simpleContent>
    <xs:extension base="xs:hexBinary">
      <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="cimReference">
  <xs:sequence>
    <xs:any namespace="##other" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </xs:sequence>
  <xs:anyAttribute namespace="##any" processContents="lax"/>
</xs:complexType>

<!-- The following datatypes are used exclusively to define metadata fragments -->
<xs:attribute name="qualifier" type="xs:boolean"/>

<xs:complexType name="qualifierString">
  <xs:simpleContent>
    <xs:extension base="cim:cimString">
      <xs:attribute ref="cim:qualifier" use="required"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="qualifierBoolean">
  <xs:simpleContent>
    <xs:extension base="cim:cimBoolean">
      <xs:attribute ref="cim:qualifier" use="required"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="qualifierUInt32">
  <xs:simpleContent>
    <xs:extension base="cim:cimUnsignedInt">
      <xs:attribute ref="cim:qualifier" use="required"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name="qualifierSInt64">
  <xs:simpleContent>
    <xs:extension base="cim:cimLong">
      <xs:attribute ref="cim:qualifier" use="required"/>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

```

EXAMPLE A-9 The cim-common.xsd Schema (Continued)

```

        </xs:extension>
    </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>
<!--
<xs:complexType name="qualifierSArray">
    <xs:complexContent>
        <xs:extension base="cim:qualifierString"/>
    </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
-->
<!-- The following element is to be used only for defining metadata -->
<xs:element name="DefaultValue" type="xs:anySimpleType"/>
</xs:schema>

```

The GenericProperty XML Schema

This schema is an extension to the Open Virtualization Format (OVF) schema.

EXAMPLE A-10 The GenericProperty XML Schema

```

<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8'?>
<xs:schema
    targetNamespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/GenericProperty"
    xmlns:class="/var/opt/SUNWldom/GenericProperty"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">

    <xs:complexType name="GenericProperty_Type" type="xs:string">
        <xs:attribute name="key" type="xs:string" use="required"/>

    </xs:complexType>
    <xs:element name="GenericProperty" type="class:GenericProperty_Type"/>

</xs:schema>

```

Binding_Type XML Schema

This schema is an extension to the Open Virtualization Format (OVF) schema.

EXAMPLE A-11 Binding_Type XML Schema

```

<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8'?>
<xs:schema
    targetNamespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/Binding"

```

EXAMPLE A-11 Binding_Type XML Schema (Continued)

```
xmlns:class="/var/opt/SUNWldom/Binding"
xmlns:rasd="/var/opt/SUNWldom/CIM_ResourceAllocationSettingData"
xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">

<xs:import namespace="/var/opt/SUNWldom/CIM_ResourceAllocationSettingData"
  schemaLocation="cim-rasd.xsd"/>

<xs:complexType name="Binding_Type">
  <xs:sequence>
    <xs:element name="Item"
      type="rasd:CIM_ResourceAllocationSettingData_Type"/>
  </xs:sequence>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:schema>
```


Logical Domains Manager Discovery

Logical Domains Managers can be discovered on a subnet by using multicast messages. The `ldmd` daemon is able to listen on a network for a specific multicast packet. If that multicast message is of a certain type, `ldmd` replies to the caller. This enables `ldmd` to be discovered on systems that are running Logical Domains.

This appendix provides information about discovering the Logical Domains Manager running on systems on a subnet.

Discovering Systems Running Logical Domains Manager

Multicast Communication

This discovery mechanism uses the same multicast network that is used by the `ldmd` daemon to detect collisions when automatically assigning MAC addresses. To configure the multicast socket, you must supply the following information:

```
#define MAC_MULTI_PORT      64535
#define MAC_MULTI_GROUP    "239.129.9.27"
```

By default, *only* multicast packets can be sent on the subnet to which the machine is attached. You can change the behavior by setting the `ldmd/hops` SMF property for the `ldmd` daemon.

Message Format

The discovery messages must be clearly marked so as not to be confused with other messages. The following multicast message format ensures that discovery messages can be distinguished by the discovery listening process:

```
#define    MAC_MULTI_MAGIC_NO    92792004
#define    MAC_MULTI_VERSION    1

enum {
    SEND_MSG = 0,
    RESPONSE_MSG,
    LDMD_DISC_SEND,
    LDMD_DISC_RESP,
};

typedef struct {
    uint32_t    version_no;
    uint32_t    magic_no;
    uint32_t    msg_type;
    uint32_t    resv;
    union {
        mac_lookup_t        Mac_lookup;
        ldmd_discovery_t    Ldmd_discovery;
    } payload;
#define    lookup        payload.Mac_lookup
#define    discovery    payload.Ldmd_discovery
} multicast_msg_t;

#define    LDMD_VERSION_LEN    32

typedef struct {
    char        ldmd_version[LDMD_VERSION_LEN];
    char        hostname[MAXHOSTNAMELEN];
    struct in_addr    ip_address;
    int        port_no;
} ldmd_discovery_t;
```

▼ Discover Logical Domains Managers Running on Your Subnet

1 Open a multicast socket.

Ensure that you use the port and group information specified in [“Multicast Communication” on page 237](#).

2 Send a multicast_msg_t message over the socket.

The message should include the following:

- Valid value for `version_no`, which is 1 as defined by `MAC_MULTI_VERSION`
- Valid value for `magic_no`, which is 92792004 as defined by `MAC_MULTI_MAGIC_NO`
- `msg_type` of `LDMD_DISC_SEND`

3 Listen on the multicast socket for responses from Logical Domains Managers.

The responses must be a `multicast_msg_t` message with the following:

- Valid value for `version_no`
- Valid value for `magic_no`
- `msg_type` set to `LDMD_DISC_RESP`
- Payload consisting of a `ldmd_discovery_t` structure, which contains the following information:
 - `ldmd_version` – Version of the Logical Domains Manager running on the system
 - `hostname` – Host name of the system
 - `ip_address` – IP address of the system
 - `port_no` – Port number being used by the Logical Domains Manager for communications, which should be XMPP port 6482

When listening for a response from Logical Domains Managers, ensure that any auto-allocation MAC collision-detection packets are discarded.

Logical Domains Physical-to-Virtual Migration Tool

This appendix covers the following topics:

- “Logical Domains P2V Migration Tool Overview” on page 241
- “Installing the Logical Domains P2V Migration Tool” on page 243
- “Using the `ldmp2v` Command” on page 244

Logical Domains P2V Migration Tool Overview

The Logical Domains P2V Migration Tool automatically converts an existing physical system to a virtual system that runs in a logical domain on a chip multithreading (CMT) system. The source system can be any of the following:

- Any sun4u SPARC system that runs at least the Solaris 8 Operating System
- Any sun4v system that runs the Solaris 10 OS, but does not run in a logical domain

The conversion from a physical system to a virtual system is performed in the following phases:

- **Collection phase.** Runs on the physical source system. `collect` creates a file system image of the source system based on the configuration information that it collects about the source system.
- **Preparation phase.** Runs on the control domain of the target system. `prepare` creates the logical domain on the target system based on the configuration information collected in the `collect` phase. The file system image is restored to one or more virtual disks. The image is modified to enable it to run as a logical domain.
- **Conversion phase.** Runs on the control domain of the target system. In the `convert` phase, the created logical domain is converted into a logical domain that runs the Solaris 10 OS by using the standard Solaris upgrade process.

For information about the P2V migration tool, see the `ldmp2v(1M)` man page.

The following sections describe how the conversion from a physical system to a virtual system is performed in phases.

Collection Phase

This phase runs on the system to be converted. To create a consistent file system image, ensure that the system is as quiet as possible and that all applications are stopped. `ldmp2v` creates a backup of all mounted UFS file systems, so ensure that any file systems to be migrated to the logical domain are mounted. You can exclude mounted file systems by using the `-x`.

No changes are required on the source system. The only thing required is the `ldmp2v` script that was installed on the control domain. Depending on the selected archiving method you intend to use, ensure that the `ufsdump` or `flarc` utility is present on the source system.

Preparation Phase

The preparation phase uses the data collected during the collection phase to create a logical domain that is comparable to the source system.

You can use the `ldmp2v prepare` command in one of the following ways:

- **Automatic mode.** Automatically creates virtual disks and restores file system data.
 - Creates the logical domain and the required virtual disks of the same size as on the source system.
 - Partitions the disks and restores the file systems.

If the combined size of the `/`, `/usr`, and `/var` file systems is less than 10 Gbytes, the sizes of these file systems are automatically adjusted to allow for the larger disk space requirements of the Solaris 10 OS. Automatic resize can be disabled by using the `-x no-auto-adjust-fs` option or by using the `-m` option to manually resize a file system.
 - Modifies the OS image of the logical domain to replace all references to physical hardware with versions that are appropriate for a logical domain. This enables you to upgrade the system to the Solaris 10 OS by using the normal Solaris upgrade process. Modifications include updating the `/etc/vfstab` file to account for new disk names. Any SVM mirrored disks are automatically unencapsulated during this process.
- **Non-automatic mode.** You must create the virtual disks and restore the file system data. This enables you to change the size and number of disks, the partitioning, and the file system layout. The preparation phase in this mode only runs the logical domain creation and the OS image modification steps on the file system rooted at `guest-root`.
- **Cleanup mode.** Removes a logical domain and all of the underlying backend devices that are created by `ldmp2v`.

Conversion Phase

In the conversion phase, the logical domain uses the Solaris upgrade process to upgrade to the Solaris 10 OS. The upgrade operation removes all existing packages and installs the Solaris 10 sun4v packages, which automatically performs a sun4u-to-sun4v conversion. The convert phase can use a Solaris DVD iso image or a network install image. You can also use Custom JumpStart to perform a fully automated hands-off upgrade operation.

Installing the Logical Domains P2V Migration Tool

The Logical Domains P2V Migration Tool must *only* be installed and configured on the control domain. If the P2V tool is not installed in a directory that is shared between the source and target systems, you must copy the `bin/ldmp2v` script to the source system.

Prerequisites

Before you can run the Logical Domains P2V Migration Tool, ensure that the following are true:

- Target system runs at least Logical Domains 1.1 on the following:
 - Solaris 10 10/08 OS
 - Solaris 10 5/08 OS with the appropriate Logical Domains 1.1 patches
- Guest domains run at least the Solaris 10 5/08 OS
- Source system runs at least the Solaris 8 OS

In addition to these prerequisites, configure an NFS file system to be shared by both the source and target systems. This file system should be writable by `root`. However, if a shared file system is not available, use a local file system that is large enough to hold a file system dump of the source system on both the source and target systems.

Limitations

Version 1.0 of the Logical Domains P2V Migration Tool has the following limitations:

- Only UFS file systems are supported.
- Each guest domain can have only a single virtual switch and virtual disk service.
- The flash archiving method silently ignores excluded file systems.

▼ Install the Logical Domains P2V Migration Tool

1 Go to the Logical Domains download page at <http://www.sun.com/servers/coolthreads/ldoms/get.jsp>.

2 Download the P2V software package, `SUNWldmp2v`.

3 Become superuser.

4 Use the `pkgadd` command to install the `SUNWldmp2v` package.

```
# pkgadd -d . SUNWldmp2v
```

5 Create the `/etc/ldmp2v.conf` file to configure the following properties:

- `VDS` – Name of the virtual disk service, such as `VDS="primary-vds0"`
- `VSW` – Name of the virtual switch, such as `VSW="primary-vsw0"`
- `VCC` – Name of the virtual console concentrator, such as `VCC="primary-vcc0"`
- `BACKEND_TYPE` – Backend type of `zvol` or `file`
- `BACKEND_SPARSE` – Whether to create backend devices as sparse volumes or files
`BACKEND_SPARSE="yes"`, or non-sparse volumes or files `BACKEND_SPARSE="no"`
- `BACKEND_PREFIX` – Location to create virtual disk backend devices
When `BACKEND_TYPE="zvol"`, specify the `BACKEND_PREFIX` value as a ZFS dataset name.
When `BACKEND_TYPE="files"`, the `BACKEND_PREFIX` value is interpreted as a path name of a directory that is relative to `.`
For example, `BACKEND_PREFIX="tank/ldoms"` would result in having ZVOLs created in the `tank/ldoms/domain-name` dataset, and files created in the `/tank/ldoms/domain-name` subdirectory.
- `BOOT_TIMEOUT` – Timeout for Solaris OS boot in seconds

For more information, see the `ldmp2v.conf.sample` configuration file that is part of the downloadable bundle.

Using the `ldmp2v` Command

This section includes examples for the three phases.

EXAMPLE C-1 Collection Phase Examples

The following examples show how you might use the `ldmp2v collect` command.

- **Sharing an NFS-mounted file system.** The following example shows the simplest way to perform the `collect` step where the source and target systems share an NFS-mounted file system.

As superuser, ensure that all required UFS file systems are mounted.

```
volumia# df -k
Filesystem            kbytes    used    avail capacity  Mounted on
/dev/dsk/c1t1d0s0    16516485  463289 15888032    3%      /
/proc                 0          0        0      0%      /proc
fd                    0          0        0      0%      /dev/fd
mnttab                0          0        0      0%      /etc/mnttab
/dev/dsk/c1t1d0s3    8258597   4304 8171708    1%      /var
swap                  4487448   16 4487432    1%      /var/run
swap                  4487448   16 4487432    1%      /tmp
/dev/dsk/c1t0d0s0    1016122   9 955146    1%      /u01
vandikhout:/u1/home/dana
                        6230996752 1051158977 5179837775    17%    /home/dana
```

The following shows how to run the collection tool when the source and target systems share an NFS-mounted file system:

```
volumia# ldmp2v collect -d /home/dana/p2v/volumia
Collecting system configuration ...
Archiving file systems ...
  DUMP: Writing 63 Kilobyte records
  DUMP: Date of this level 0 dump: vr 28 nov 2008 15:04:03 MET
  DUMP: Date of last level 0 dump: the epoch
  DUMP: Dumping /dev/rdsk/c1t1d0s0 (volumia:/) to /home/dana/p2v/ufsdump.0.
  DUMP: Mapping (Pass I) [regular files]
  DUMP: Mapping (Pass II) [directories]
  DUMP: Estimated 950240 blocks (463,98MB).
  DUMP: Dumping (Pass III) [directories]
  DUMP: Dumping (Pass IV) [regular files]
  DUMP: 950164 blocks (463,95MB) on 1 volume at 6215 KB/sec
  DUMP: DUMP IS DONE
  DUMP: Writing 63 Kilobyte records
  DUMP: Date of this level 0 dump: vr 28 nov 2008 15:05:27 MET
  DUMP: Date of last level 0 dump: the epoch
  DUMP: Dumping /dev/rdsk/c1t0d0s0 (volumia:/u01) to /home/dana/p2v/ufsdump.1.
  DUMP: Mapping (Pass I) [regular files]
  DUMP: Mapping (Pass II) [directories]
  DUMP: Estimated 282 blocks (141KB).
  DUMP: Dumping (Pass III) [directories]
  DUMP: Dumping (Pass IV) [regular files]
```

EXAMPLE C-1 Collection Phase Examples (Continued)

```

DUMP: 250 blocks (125KB) on 1 volume at 8928 KB/sec
DUMP: DUMP IS DONE
DUMP: Writing 63 Kilobyte records
DUMP: Date of this level 0 dump: vr 28 nov 2008 15:05:27 MET
DUMP: Date of last level 0 dump: the epoch
DUMP: Dumping /dev/rdsk/clt1d0s3 (volumia:/var) to /home/dana/p2v/ufsdump.2.
DUMP: Mapping (Pass I) [regular files]
DUMP: Mapping (Pass II) [directories]
DUMP: Estimated 13324 blocks (6,51MB).
DUMP: Dumping (Pass III) [directories]
DUMP: Dumping (Pass IV) [regular files]
DUMP: 13228 blocks (6,46MB) on 1 volume at 1146 KB/sec
DUMP: DUMP IS DONE

```

- Not sharing an NFS-mounted file system.** When the source and target systems do not share an NFS-mounted file system, the file system image can be written to local storage and be later copied to the control domain. Since it is not possible to use `ufsdump` to exclude files, use the flash archiving method that is provided by `ldmp2v`. The flash tool automatically excludes the archive that it creates.

```

volumia# ldmp2v collect -d /home/dana/p2v/volumia -a flash
Collecting system configuration ...
Archiving file systems ...
Determining which filesystems will be included in the archive...
Creating the archive...
895080 blocks
Archive creation complete.

```

- Skip file-system backup step.** If backups of the system are already available using a third-party backup tool such as NetBackup, you can skip the file system backup step by using the `none` archiving method. When you use this option, only the system configuration manifest is created.

```

volumia# ldmp2v collect -d /home/dana/p2v/volumia -a none
Collecting system configuration ...
The following file system(s) must be archived manually: / /u01 /var

```

Note that if the directory specified by `-d` is not shared by the source and target systems, copy the contents of that directory to the control domain. The directory contents must be copied to the control domain prior to beginning the preparation phase.

EXAMPLE C-2 Preparation Phase Examples

The following examples show how you might use the `ldmp2v prepare` command.

- The following example creates a logical domain called `volumia` by using the defaults configured in `/etc/ldmp2v.conf` while keeping the MAC addresses of the physical system:

```
# ldmp2v prepare -d /home/dana/p2v/volumia -o keep-mac volumia
Creating vdisks ...
Creating file systems ...
Populating file systems ...
Modifying guest domain OS image ...
Removing SVM configuration ...
Unmounting guest file systems ...
Creating domain volumia ...
Attaching vdisks to domain volumia ...
```

- The following command shows information about the `volumia` logical domain:

```
# ldm list -l volumia
NAME              STATE      FLAGS    CONS    VCPU  MEMORY  UTIL  UPTIME
volumia          inactive  - - - - -      2      4G

NETWORK
NAME  SERVICE          DEVICE    MAC              MODE  PVID VID
vnet0 primary-vsw0      00:03:ba:1d:7a:5a  1

DISK
NAME  DEVICE  TOUT  MPGROUP    VOLUME              SERVER
disk0                volumia-vol0@primary-vds0
disk1                volumia-vol1@primary-vds0
```

- The following shows that you can completely remove a domain and its backend devices by using the `-C` option:

```
# ldmp2v prepare -C volumia
Cleaning up domain volumia ...
Removing vdisk disk0 ...
Removing vdisk disk1 ...
Removing domain volumia ...
Removing volume volumia-vol0@primary-vds0 ...
Removing ZFS volume tank/ldoms/volumia/disk0 ...
Removing volume volumia-vol1@primary-vds0 ...
Removing ZFS volume tank/ldoms/volumia/disk1 ...
```

- The following shows that you can resize one or more file systems during P2V by specifying the mount point and the new size with the `-m` option:

EXAMPLE C-2 Preparation Phase Examples (Continued)

```
# ldmp2v prepare -d /home/dana/p2v/normaal -m /:8g normaal
Resizing file systems ...
Creating vdisks ...
Creating file systems ...
Populating file systems ...
Modifying guest domain OS image ...
Removing SVM configuration ...
Modifying file systems on SVM devices ...
Unmounting guest file systems ...
Creating domain normaal ...
Attaching vdisks to domain normaal ...
```

EXAMPLE C-3 Conversion Phase Examples

The following examples show how you might use the `ldmp2v convert` command.

- Using a network installation server.** The `ldmp2v convert` command boots the Logical Domain over the network by using the specified virtual network interface. You must run the `setup_install_server` and `add_install_client` scripts on the installation server. You can use the Custom JumpStart feature to perform a completely hands-off conversion. This feature requires that you create and configure the appropriate `sysidcfg` and profile files for the client on the JumpStart server. The profile should consist of the following lines:

```
install_type    upgrade
root_device    c0d0s0
```

The `sysidcfg` file is only used for the upgrade operation, so a configuration such as the following should be sufficient:

```
name_service=NONE
root_password=uQkoXlMLCsZhI
system_locale=C
timeserver=localhost
timezone=Europe/Amsterdam
terminal=vt100
security_policy=NONE
nfs4_domain=dynamic
network_interface=PRIMARY {netmask=255.255.255.192
                           default_route=none protocol_ipv6=no}
```

For more information about using Custom JumpStart, see *Solaris 10 5/09 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

```
# ldmp2v convert -j -n vnet0 -d /p2v/volumia volumia
LDom volumia started
```

EXAMPLE C-3 Conversion Phase Examples (Continued)

```
Waiting for Solaris to come up ...
Using Custom JumpStart
Trying 0.0.0.0...
Connected to 0.
Escape character is '^]'.

Connecting to console "volumia" in group "volumia" ....
Press ~? for control options ..
SunOS Release 5.10 Version Generic_137137-09 64-bit
Copyright 1983-2008 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Use is subject to license terms.
onfiguring devices.
Using RPC Bootparams for network configuration information.
Attempting to configure interface vnet0...
Configured interface vnet0
Reading ZFS config: done.
Setting up Java. Please wait...
Serial console, reverting to text install
Beginning system identification...
Searching for configuration file(s)...
Using sysid configuration file
  129.159.206.54:/opt/SUNWjet/Clients/volumia/sysidcfg
Search complete.
Discovering additional network configuration...
Completing system identification..
Starting remote procedure call (RPC) services: done.
System identification complete.
Starting Solaris installation program...
Searching for JumpStart directory...
Using rules.ok from 129.159.206.54:/opt/SUNWjet.
Checking rules.ok file...
Using begin script: Clients/volumia/begin
Using profile: Clients/volumia/profile
Using finish script: Clients/volumia/finish
Executing JumpStart preinstall phase...
Executing begin script "Clients/volumia/begin"...
Begin script Clients/volumia/begin execution completed.
Searching for SolStart directory...
Checking rules.ok file...
Using begin script: install_begin
Using finish script: patch_finish
Executing SolStart preinstall phase...
Executing begin script "install_begin"...
Begin script install_begin execution completed.
WARNING: Backup media not specified. A backup media (backup_media)
keyword must be specified if an upgrade with disk space reallocation
```

EXAMPLE C-3 Conversion Phase Examples (Continued)

is required

Processing profile

Loading local environment and services

Generating upgrade actions

Checking file system space: 100% completed

Space check complete.

Building upgrade script

Preparing system for Solaris upgrade

Upgrading Solaris: 10% completed

[...]

- **Using an ISO image.** The `ldmp2v convert` command attaches the Solaris DVD ISO image to the logical domain and boots from it. To upgrade, answer all `sysid` prompts and select Upgrade.

Note – The answers to the `sysid` questions are only used during the upgrade process, so you can select the simplest options (non-networked, no naming service, and so on). The system's original identity is preserved by the upgrade and takes effect on the reboot after the upgrade is complete. The time required to perform the upgrade depends on the Solaris cluster that is installed on the original system.

```
# ldmp2v convert -i /tank/iso/s10s_u5.iso -d /home/dana/p2v/volumia volumia
```

```
Testing original system status ...
```

```
LDom volumia started
```

```
Waiting for Solaris to come up ...
```

```
Select 'Upgrade' (F2) when prompted for the installation type.
```

```
Disconnect from the console after the Upgrade has finished.
```

```
Trying 0.0.0.0...
```

```
Connected to 0.
```

```
Escape character is '^'.
```

```
Connecting to console "volumia" in group "volumia" ....
```

```
Press ~? for control options ..
```

```
Configuring devices.
```

```
Using RPC Bootparams for network configuration information.
```

```
Attempting to configure interface vnet0...
```

EXAMPLE C-3 Conversion Phase Examples (Continued)

```
Extracting windowing system. Please wait...
Beginning system identification...
Searching for configuration file(s)...
Search complete.
Discovering additional network configuration...
Configured interface vnet0
Setting up Java. Please wait...
```

Select a Language

- 0. English
- 1. French
- 2. German
- 3. Italian
- 4. Japanese
- 5. Korean
- 6. Simplified Chinese
- 7. Spanish
- 8. Swedish
- 9. Traditional Chinese

Please make a choice (0 - 9), or press h or ? for help:
[...]

- Solaris Interactive Installation -----

This system is upgradable, so there are two ways to install the Solaris software.

The Upgrade option updates the Solaris software to the new release, saving as many modifications to the previous version of Solaris software as possible. Back up the system before using the Upgrade option.

The Initial option overwrites the system disks with the new version of Solaris software. This option allows you to preserve any existing file systems. Back up any modifications made to the previous version of Solaris software before starting the Initial option.

After you select an option and complete the tasks that follow, a summary of your actions will be displayed.

F2_Upgrade F3_Go Back F4_Initial F5_Exit F6_Help

Logical Domains Configuration Assistant

The Logical Domains Configuration Assistant leads you through the configuration of a logical domain by setting basic properties. It runs on chip multithreading (CMT)-based systems that are known as Sun Coolthreads Servers.

After gathering the configuration data, the Configuration Assistant creates a configuration that is suitable for booting as a logical domain. You can also use the default values selected by the Configuration Assistant to create a usable system configuration.

The Configuration Assistant is available as both a graphical user interface (GUI) and terminal-based tool, `ldmconfig`.

For information about the terminal-based tool, see [“Using the Logical Domains Configuration Assistant \(`ldmconfig`\)” on page 254](#) and the `ldmconfig(1M)` man page.

For information about starting the GUI tool, see [“Using the Logical Domains Configuration Assistant \(GUI\)” on page 253](#).

Using the Logical Domains Configuration Assistant (GUI)

The Logical Domains Configuration Assistant GUI is delivered as part of the Logical Domains zip bundle.

Ensure that the target system is running the Logical Domains 1.2 software and that your system is running at least version 1.6 of the Java™ SE Runtime Environment.

To run the Configuration Assistant GUI from the command line, type the following:

```
$ java -jar "Configurator.jar"
```

This GUI tool includes on-screen documentation to help you create the configuration for your system.

Using the Logical Domains Configuration Assistant (`ldmconfig`)

The terminal-based Configuration Assistant, `ldmconfig`, works through a series of operations that correspond to user interface screens. The end result is the creation of a configuration that you can deploy to a logical domain.

The following sections describe how to install the `ldmconfig` command and some features of the Configuration Assistant tool.

Installing the Logical Domains Configuration Assistant

The Logical Domains Configuration Assistant is delivered as part of the `SUNWldm` package.

After you install the `SUNWldm` package, you can find the `ldmconfig` command in the `/usr/sbin` directory. The command is also installed in the `/opt/SUNWldm/bin` directory for legacy purposes.

Prerequisites

Before you install and run the Logical Domains Configuration Assistant, ensure that the following conditions are met:

- The target system must be running the Logical Domains 1.2 software.
- Your terminal window must be at least 80 characters wide by 24 lines long.

Limitations and Known Issues

The Logical Domains Configuration Assistant has the following limitations:

- Resizing the terminal while using `ldmconfig` might cause garbled output
- Support for UFS disk files as virtual disks only
- Only works with systems where no existing logical domains configurations are present
- Virtual console concentrator ports are from 5000 to 5100
- Default names that are used for guest domains, services, and devices cannot be changed

`ldmconfig` Features

The terminal-based Configuration Assistant, `ldmconfig`, works through a series of operations that correspond to user interface screens. You can navigate backward (previous) and forward

(next) through these screens until you reach the final step. The final step produces the configuration. At any time you can quit the Configuration Assistant or reset the configuration to use the defaults. From the final screen, you can deploy the configuration to a logical domain.

First, the Configuration Assistant automatically inspects the system to determine the most suitable default property values based on best practices, and then shows those properties that are required to control a deployment. Note that this is not an exhaustive list. You can set other properties to further customize the configuration.

For information about the using the `ldmconfig` tool, see the `ldmconfig(1M)` man page.

You can adjust the following properties:

- **Number of guest domains.** Specify the number of guest domains for the application to create. The minimum is one guest domain. The maximum value is determined by the availability of VCPU resources. For example, you could create up to 60 guest domains with a single thread each on a 64-thread CMT system, and four threads reserved for the control domain. If best practices are selected, the minimum number of VCPU resources per guest domain is a single core. So, on an 8-core, 8-thread-per-core system with best practices selected, you could create up to seven guest domains with one core each. Also, one core is assigned to the control domain.

The Configuration Assistant shows the maximum number of domains that can be configured for this system.

The Configuration Assistant performs the following tasks to create domains:

- **For all domains.**
 - Creates a virtual terminal service on ports from 5000 to 5100
 - Creates a virtual disk service
 - Creates a virtual network switch on the network adapter nominated
 - Enables the virtual terminal server daemon
- **For each domain.**
 - Creates the logical domain
 - Configures VCPUs assigned to the domain
 - Configures memory assigned to the domain
 - Creates a UFS disk file to use as a virtual disk
 - Creates a virtual disk server device (`vdsdev`) for the disk file
 - Assigns the disk file as virtual disk `vdisk0` for the domain
 - Adds a virtual network adapter attached to the virtual switch on the network adapter nominated
 - Sets the OBP property `auto-boot?=true`
 - Sets the OBP property `boot-device=vdisk0`
 - Binds the domain

- Starts the domain
- **Default network.** Specify the network adapter that the new domains will use for virtual networking. The adapter must be present in the system. The Configuration Assistant highlights those adapters that are currently in use by the system as default adapters, and those that have active link status (cabled adapters).
- **Virtual disk size.** Create virtual disks for each of the new domains. These virtual disks are created based on the disk files that are located in the local file systems. This property controls the size of each virtual disk in Gbytes. The minimum size, 8 Gbytes, is based on the approximate size required to contain a Solaris 10 OS, and the maximum size is 100 Gbytes. If the Configuration Assistant cannot find file systems that have adequate space to contain the disk files for all domains, an error screen is shown. In this case, you might need to do the following before rerunning the application:
 - Reduce the size of the virtual disks
 - Reduce the number of domains
 - Add more higher-capacity file systems
- **Virtual disk directory.** Specify a file system that has sufficient capacity on which to store the files to be created as virtual disks for the new domains. The directory is based on the number of domains that are selected and the size of the virtual disks. The value must be recalculated and destination directories selected any time that these property values are changed. The Configuration Assistant presents you with a list of file systems that have sufficient space. After you specify the file system name, the Configuration Assistant creates a directory in this file system called `/ldoms/disks` in which to create the disk images.
- **Best practice.** Specify whether to use best practice for property values.
 - When the value is yes, the Configuration Assistant uses best practice for several configuration property values. It forces the minimum of one core per domain, including the system domains. As a result, this limits the maximum number of guest domains to the total number of cores present in the system minus one core for the system domains. For example, in the case of a two-socket SPARC Enterprise® T5140 with eight cores each, the maximum number of guest domains is 15 plus the system domain.
 - When the value is no, the Configuration Assistant permits the creation of domains that have a minimum of one thread, but maintain at least four threads for the system domain.

Next, the Configuration Assistant summarizes the deployment configuration to be created, which includes the following information:

- Number of domains
- CPU assigned to each guest domain
- Memory assigned to each guest domain
- Size and location of the virtual disks
- Network adapter to be used for virtual network services for guest domains
- Amount of CPU and memory to be used by the system for services

-
- If a valid Solaris OS DVD was identified, it will be used to create a shared virtual CD-ROM device to permit guest domains to install the Solaris OS

Finally, the Configuration Assistant configures the system to create the specified Logical Domains deployment. It also describes the actions to be taken and shows the commands to be run to configure the system. This information can assist you in learning how to use the `ldm` commands that are needed to configure the system.



Caution – Do *not* interact with this configuration step and do *not* interrupt this process as it might result in a partially configured system.

After the commands have been completed successfully, reboot the system for the changes to take effect.

Glossary

This list defines terminology, abbreviations, and acronyms in the Logical Domains documentation.

A

ALOM CMT	Advanced Lights Out Manager chip multithreading, which runs on the service processor and allows you to monitor and control your CMT server
API	Application Programming Interface
audit reduce	Merge and select audit records from audit trail files, see the audit reduce(1M) man page.
auditing	Using the Solaris OS BSM to identify the source of security changes
authorization	Setting up authorization using the Solaris OS RBAC

B

bge	Broadcom Gigabit Ethernet driver on Broadcom BCM57xx devices
BSM	Basic Security module
bsmconv	Enable the BSM, see the bsmconv(1M) man page.
bsmunconv	Disable the BSM, see the bsmunconv(1M) man page.

C

CD	Compact disc
CLI	Command-line interface

compliance	Determining if a system's configuration is in compliance with a predefined security profile
configuration	Name of logical domain configuration that is saved on the service processor
CMT	Chip multithreading
constraints	To the Logical Domains Manager, constraints are one or more resources you want to have assigned to a particular domain. You either receive all the resources you ask to be added to a domain or you get none of them, depending upon the available resources.
control domain	Domain that creates and manages other logical domains and services
CPU	Central processing unit
CWQ	Control Word Queue; cryptographic unit for Sun UltraSPARC T2-based platforms

D

DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DMA	Direct Memory Access is the ability to directly transfer data between the memory and a device (for example, a network card) without involving the CPU.
DMP	Dynamic Multipathing (Veritas)
DPS	Data plane software
DR	Dynamic reconfiguration
drd	Dynamic reconfiguration daemon for Logical Domains Manager (Solaris 10 OS), see the drd(1M) man page.
DS	Domain Services module (Solaris 10 OS)
DVD	Digital versatile disc

E

e1000g	Driver for Intel PRO/1000 Gigabit family of network interface controllers
EFI	Extensible firmware interface
ETM	Encoding Table Management module (Solaris 10 OS)

F

FC_AL	Fiber Channel Arbitrated Loop
FMA	Fault Management Architecture
fmd	Fault manager daemon (Solaris 10 OS), see the fmd(1M) man page.
format	Disk partitioning and maintenance utility, see the format(1M) man page.
fmthard	Populate label on hard disks, see the fmthard(1M) man page.
FTP	File Transfer Protocol

G

Gb	Gigabit
guest domain	Uses services from the I/O and service domains and is managed by the control domain.
GLDv3	Generic LAN Driver version 3.

H

hardening	Modifying Solaris OS configuration to improve security
HDD	Hard disk drive
hypervisor	Firmware layer interposed between the operating system and the hardware layer

I

I/O domain	Domain that has direct ownership of and direct access to physical I/O devices and that shares those devices to other logical domains in the form of virtual devices
IB	Infiniband
IDE	Integrated Drive Electronics
IDR	Interim Diagnostics Release
ILOM	Integrated Lights Out Manager
io	I/O devices, such as internal disks and PCI-E controllers and their attached adapters and devices

ioctl	Input/output control call
IP	Internet Protocol
IPMP	Internet Protocol Network Multipathing
ISO	International Organization for Standardization

K

kaio	Kernel asynchronous input/output
KB	Kilobyte
KU	Kernel update

L

LAN	Local-area network
LDAP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
LDC	Logical domain channel
ldm	Logical Domain Manager utility, see the ldm(1M) man page.
ldmd	Logical Domains Manager daemon
lofi	Loopback file
logical domain	A virtual machine comprised of a discrete logical grouping of resources, which has its own operating system and identity within a single computer system
Logical Domains (LDoms) Manager	A CLI to create and manage logical domains and allocate resources to domains
LUN	Logical unit number

M

MAC	Media access control address, which Logical Domains can automatically assign or you can assign manually
MAU	Modular Arithmetic Unit; the cryptographic device for Sun UltraSPARC T1-based platforms

MB	Megabyte
MD	Machine description in the server database
mem, memory	Memory unit - default size in bytes, or specify gigabytes (G), kilobytes (K), or megabytes (M). Virtualized memory of the server that can be allocated to guest domains.
metadb	Create and delete replicas of the SVM metadvice state database, see the metadb(1M) man page.
metaset	Configure disk sets, see the metaset(1M) man page.
mhd	Multihost disk control operations, see the mhd(7i) man page.
MIB	Management Information Base
minimizing	Installing the minimum number of core Solaris OS package necessary
MMF	Multimode fiber
MMU	Memory management unit
mpgroup	Multipathing group name for virtual disk failover
mtu	Maximum transmission unit

N

NAT	Network Address Translation
ndpsldcc	Netra DPS Logical Domain Channel Client. <i>See also</i> vdpcc.
ndpsldcs	Netra DPS Logical Domain Channel Service. <i>See also</i> vdpcs.
NFS	Network file system
NIS	Network Information Services
NIU	Network Interface Unit (Sun SPARC Enterprise T5120 and T5220 servers)
NTS	Network terminal server
NVRAM	Non-volatile random-access memory
nxge	Driver for Sun x8 Express 1/10G Ethernet Adapter

O

OS	Operating system
-----------	------------------

OVF Open Virtualization Format

P

P2V Logical Domains Physical-to-Virtual Migration Tool

PA Physical address

PCI Peripheral component interconnect bus

PCI-E PCI EXPRESS bus

PCI-X PCI Extended bus

pcpu Physical CPU

physio Physical input/output

PICL Platform Information and Control Library

picld PICL daemon, see the [picld\(1M\)](#) man page.

PM Power management of virtual CPUs

praudit Print contents of an audit trail file, see the [praudit\(1M\)](#) man page.

PRI Priority

R

RA Real address

RAID Redundant Array of Inexpensive Disks

RBAC Role-Based Access Control

RPC Remote Procedure Call

S

SASL Simple Authentication and Security Layer

SAX Simple API for XML parser, which traverses an XML document. The SAX parser is event-based and used mostly for streaming data.

system controller (SC)	Also see service processor
SCSI	Small Computer System Interface
service domain	Logical domain that provides devices, such as virtual switches, virtual console connectors, and virtual disk servers to other logical domains
SMA	System Management Agent
SMF	Service Management Facility
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
service processor (SP)	Also see system controller
SSH	Secure Shell
ssh	Secure Shell command, see the ssh(1) man page.
sshd	Secure Shell daemon, see the sshd(1M) man page.
SunVTS	Sun Validation Test Suite
svcadm	Manipulate service instances, see the svcadm(1M) man page.
SVM	Solaris Volume Manager

T

TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TLS	Transport Layer Security

U

UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UFS	UNIX File System
unicast	Communication that takes place over a network between a single sender and a single receiver.
USB	Universal Serial Bus
uscsi	User SCSI command interface, see the uscsi(7I) man page.
UTP	Unshielded twisted pair

V

var	Variable
VBSC	Virtual blade system controller
vcc, vconscn	Virtual console concentrator service with a specific port range to assign to the guest domains
vcons, vconsole	Virtual console for accessing system level messages. A connection is achieved by connecting to vcons con service in the control domain at a specific port.
vcpu	Virtual central processing unit. Each of the cores of a server are represented as virtual CPUs. For example, an 8-core Sun Fire T2000 Server has 32 virtual CPUs that can be allocated between the logical domains.
vdc	Virtual disk client
vdpc	Virtual data plane channel client in a Netra DPS environment
vdpcs	Virtual data plane channel service in a Netra DPS environment
vdisk	Virtual disks are generic block devices backed by different types of physical devices, volumes, or files.
vds, vdiskserver	Virtual disk server allows you to import virtual disks into a logical domain.
vdsdev, vdiskserverdevice	Virtual disk server device is exported by the virtual disk server. The device can be an entire disk, a slice on a disk, a file, or a disk volume.
VLAN	Virtual local area network
vlcd	Virtual logical domain channel service
vlcdc	Virtual logical domain channel client
vnet	Virtual network device implements a virtual Ethernet device and communicates with other vnet devices in the system using the virtual network switch (vswitch).
vntsd	Virtual network terminal server daemon for Logical Domains consoles (Solaris 10 OS), see the vntsd(1M) man page.
volfs	Volume Management file system, see the volfs(7FS) man page.
vsw, vswitch	Virtual network switch that connects the virtual network devices to the external network and also switches packets between them.
VTOC	Volume table of contents
VxDMP	Veritas Dynamic Multipathing
VxVM	Veritas Volume Manager

W

WAN Wide-area network

X

XFP eXtreme Fast Path

XML Extensible Markup Language

XMPP Extensible Messaging and Presence Protocol

Z

ZFS Zettabyte File System (Solaris 10 OS)

zpool ZFS storage pool, see the [zpool\(1M\)](#) man page.

ZVOL ZFS Volume Emulation Driver

Index

A

- auditing
 - definition, 26
 - enabling BSM, 29
 - using BSM, 29
 - using Solaris Security Toolkit, 29
- authorization
 - definition, 26
 - ldm subcommands, 28
 - levels, 28
 - read, 28
 - read and write, 28

B

- Basic Security module (BSM), 26
 - auditing, 29
 - enabling, 29
- BSM, *See* Basic Security module
- bsmconv(1M) command, 29

C

- cancel-operation reconf subcommand, 23
- CLI, *See* command-line interface
- command-line interface, 21
- commands
 - bsmconv(1M), 29
 - ldm(1M), 21
 - ldmconfig(1M), 24, 253, 255

commands (*Continued*)

- ldmp2v(1M), 241
- ssh(1), 27
- compliance
 - definition, 26
 - using Solaris Security Toolkit, 29
- configuration assistant GUI, 253
- configuration
 - baseline for control domain, 27
 - factory-default, 23
 - mode, 23
 - selecting to boot, 23
 - storing on service processor, 23
- control domain, 20
 - baseline configuration, 27
 - hardening, 25, 26, 27

D

- daemons
 - drd, 22
 - ldmd, 21
 - vntsd, 22, 27
- delayed reconfiguration, 23
- disable-rpc.fin script, 27
- disable-sma.fin script, 28
- disable-ssh-root-login.fin script, 28
- domains
 - control, 20, 25, 26, 27
 - guest, 20
 - primary, 20

domains (*Continued*)

service, 20, 21

DR, *See* dynamic reconfiguration

drivers

customized, 27

ldm_control-secure.driver, 25, 26, 27

secure.driver, 26, 27

selecting alternate, 25

selecting none, 25

dynamic reconfiguration (DR), 22

dynamic reconfiguration daemon (drd), 22

E

enable-ipfilter.fin script, 27

enable-ldmd.fin script, 27

enable-ssh-root-login.fin script, 27

/etc/host.allow file, 27

/etc/ipf/ipf.conf file, 27

/etc/ssh/sshd_config file, 27

F

factory-default configuration, 23

files

changed, 27

/etc/host.allow, 27

/etc/ipf/ipf.conf, 27

/etc/ssh/sshd_config, 27

finish scripts

added, 27

disabled, 27

G

guest domain, 20

H

hardening

applying your own, 25

hardening (*Continued*)

control domain, 25, 26

definition, 26

other than control domain, 26

hypervisor, 17

definition, 17

I

install-ldm.fin script, 27

install-ldm script, 25, 27

JJASS, *See* Solaris Security ToolkitJumpStart Architecture and Security Scripts (JASS), *See*
Solaris Security Toolkit

JumpStart

minimal-ldm_control.profile, 28

minimizing, 28

LLDC, *See* logical domain channel

ldm_control-secure.driver, 25, 26, 27

ldm subcommands

cancel-operation reconf, 23

ls-dom, 23

user authorizations, 28

ldm(1M) man page, 21

ldm(1M)command, 21

ldmconfig(1M)command, 24, 253, 255

ldmd, Logical Domains Manager daemon, 21

ldmp2v(1M) command, 241

logical domain channel (LDC), 20

Logical Domains Manager, 18, 20

daemon (ldmd), 21

discovery mechanism, 237

XML schema used with, 187

XML schemas used with, 211

logical domains

definition, 17

logical domains (*Continued*)

roles, 20

ls-dom subcommand, 23

M

minimizing

definition, 26

JumpStart support, 28

minimal-ldm_control.profile, 28

using Solaris Security Toolkit, 28

P

packages

SUNWjass, 25

SUNWldm, 21, 25

patches, Solaris Security Toolkit, 26

physical devices, 20, 21

physical machine, 20

platforms

UltraSPARC T1 processor, 23

UltraSPARC T2 Plus server, 21

primary domain, 20

profiles, minimal-ldm_control.profile, 28

RRBAC, *See* Role-Based Access Control

read and write, authorizing, 28

read, authorizing, 28

resources

See also virtual devices

definition, 19

Role-Based Access Control (RBAC), 26

roles, logical domains, 20

S

scripts

disable-rpc.fin, 27

scripts (*Continued*)

disable-sma.fin, 28

disable-ssh-root-login.fin, 28

enable-ipfilter.fin, 27

enable-ldmd.fin, 27

enable-ssh-root-login.fin, 27

finish, added, 27

finish, disabled, 27

install-ldm, 25, 27

install-ldm.fin, 27

set-term-type.fin, 28

Solaris Security Toolkit, 25

secure.driver

changes from, 27

hardening other than control domain, 26

Secure Shell (ssh), use instead of Telnet, 27

security

auditing, 26

authorization, 26

compliance, 26

hardening, 26

minimizing, 26

service domain, 20, 21

service processor

monitoring and running physical machine, 20

storing configurations, 23

set-term-type.fin script, 28

Solaris Security Toolkit, 25

required patches, 26

SUNWjass package, 25

SUNWldm package, 21, 25

system controller, *See* service processor**T**

Telnet client, access to virtual consoles, 27

Telnet server, disabled, 27

U

UltraSPARC T1 processor, 23

UltraSPARC T2 Plus server, 21

V

- virtual devices, 20
 - I/O, 21
 - virtual console concentrator (vcc), 22
 - virtual disk client (vdc), 22
 - virtual disk service (vds), 22
 - virtual network (vnet), 21
 - virtual switch (vsw), 21
- virtual machine, 20
- virtual network terminal server daemon (vntsd), 22, 27

X

- XML schema
 - Logical Domains Manager used with, 187, 211